

**CADOGAN**

easy guide  
to the

Panov-Botvinnik  
attack

Jacob Aagaard

# Easy Guide to the Panov-Botvinnik Attack

Jacob Aagaard

CADOGAN

*chess*

LONDON, NEW YORK

First published in 1998 by Cadogan Books plc,  
Gloucester Mansions, 4th Floor, 140A Shaftesbury Avenue, London WC2 8HD,  
in association with  
Gambit Publications Ltd, 69 Masbro Road, London W14 0LS.

Copyright © 1998 Jacob Aagaard

The right of Jacob Aagaard to be identified as the author of this work has been asserted in accordance with the Copyrights, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, electrostatic, magnetic tape, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without prior permission in writing from the publishers.

#### **British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data**

A CIP catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

ISBN 1 85744 563 5

Distributed in North America by The Globe Pequot Press, 6 Business Park Road,  
P.O. Box 833, Old Saybrook, Connecticut 06475-0833.  
Telephone 1-800 243 0495 (toll free)

All other sales enquiries should be directed to Cadogan Books plc,  
Gloucester Mansions, 4th Floor, 140A Shaftesbury Avenue, London WC2 8HD  
Freephone 0800 328 0242

#### **CADOGAN CHESS SERIES**

*Chief Advisor:* Garry Kasparov  
*Series Editor:* Murray Chandler

Edited by Graham Burgess and Chris Baker and typeset by Petra Nunn for  
Gambit Publications Ltd.

Printed in Great Britain by Redwood Books, Trowbridge, Wilts.

# Contents

Symbols	4
Foreword	5
Introduction	6
1 The Classical Endgame	18
2 Avoiding the Endgame	39
3 6 ♖g5	51
4 6...♗e6!?	61
5 5...g6	72
6 5...e6 6 ♜f3 ♗b4 7 cxd5	83
7 7 ♗d3: Introduction and Unusual 9th Moves	89
8 9...b6	94
9 9...a6!	106
10 6...♗e7 7 cxd5 ♜xd5 8 ♗c4	115
11 6...♗e7 7 cxd5 ♜xd5 8 ♗d3	122
Index of Variations	127

# Symbols

+	check
++	double check
#	checkmate
x	capture
!!	brilliant move
!	good move
!?	interesting move
?!	dubious move
?	bad move
??	blunder
Ch	championship
Cht	team championship
Wch	world championship
Ct	candidates event
IZ	interzonal event
Z	zonal event
OL	olympiad
Ech	European Championship
ECC	European Clubs Cup
jr	junior event
wom	women's event
mem	memorial event
rp	rapidplay game
corr.	correspondence game
qual	qualifying event
1-0	the game ends in a win for White
1/2-1/2	the game ends in a draw
0-1	the game ends in a win for Black
( <i>n</i> )	<i>n</i> th match game
( <i>D</i> )	see next diagram

# Foreword

This is the first chess book I have written, and also the first time I have written a large manuscript in English, so I submit it uneasily for the reader's consideration. However, my experience in chess writing is not exactly at beginner level. I have for many years written the bulletin at the Danish championships, and thereby developed my own opinion on how a game of chess should best be annotated. Also I have some experience in coaching and live commentating, and I hope that this background has helped me in writing a good book.

The book is organized so as to present possible repertoires for both White, and for Black. For White I give only one line against 5...g6 and 5...e6 followed by 6...b4, while I have two lines against both 5...e6 followed by 6...e7 and 5...c6. For Black I have decided to provide full repertoire coverage of 5...c6 and 5...e6 followed by 6...b4.

Each chapter begins with explanatory material based on model examples from practice. By using some illustrative games I have tried to give the reader an idea of how the various positions should be handled. By playing through these examples, and studying the theoretical material in the lines one decides to play, I hope that your chances of practical success will be increased.

I have chosen the repertoires from the simple concept that what I like with White, I suggest for White, while what makes me most worried to play against with White, I have suggested for Black. I hope that this has not excluded everyone, even though I know that devotees of some lines might be disappointed by this book. Still I can only recommend that you start playing 5...c6 or 5...e6 followed by 6...b4, if you are Black.

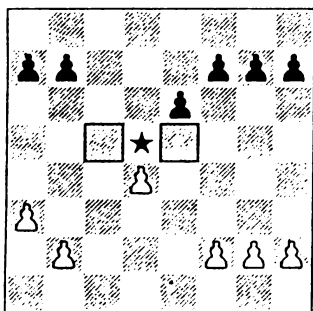
Finally I would like to thank Murray Chandler and Graham Burgess, who have been most kind to me, and encouraged me to write this book. I hope that it will neither let them nor the reader down.

Jacob Aagaard  
Denmark, 1998

# Introduction

The Caro-Kann is one of the most solid openings there are. Some would also be tempted to say one of the most boring. However, White can force the pace with one variation that is more aggressive than the rest – the Panov-Botvinnik Attack.

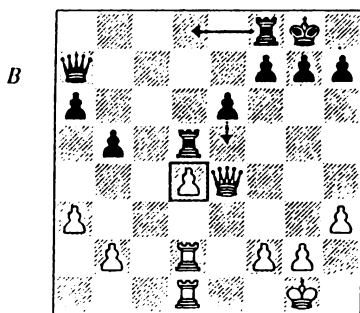
A great variety of positions occur from the Panov, with a lot of different structures. However, there is one structure that arises from many variations and is not therefore limited to one chapter – the IQP (Isolated Queen's Pawn):



IQP positions could be dealt with in the different chapters, but it is easier to get it over with at once, and show some games which give an idea of how this pawn structure should be handled.

The position is a struggle between White's desire to get an attack, and in some way profit from the activity he achieves in these positions, and the

black longing for the endgame, where he will be better, because the d-pawn is weak and the d5-square is an excellent outpost, not only for a knight, but also for the bishop, queen or sometimes even a rook. I will start with an example of how bad the position would be for White if all the minor pieces were exchanged.



Kahn – Izsak  
Hungary 1992

25...♖f8 26 f4

White had to prevent ...e5. Maybe White could postpone this with 26 ♖d3, but sooner or later he would have to push his f-pawn.

26...g6

Black should never try to play ...f6 to get in ...e5, as the e6-pawn would be a target at which White would aim with all his powers. The most likely result would be a draw. What Black does in the game is simple. By taking

control over the only fully open file on the board he gets the possibility of getting in behind the white forces.

27 ♖h1 ♜b6 28 ♞d3 ♞c8 29 ♞1d2 ♞c1+ 30 ♖h2 ♜c7 31 g3?!

This weakens the white king. I believe it would have been better to see if Black really wanted to play ...g6-g5 and be prepared to reply ♞d3-g3. After the text-move, the white king will never enjoy full safety.

31...a5 32 ♞d1 ♜c2+ 33 ♞1d2 ♜c4

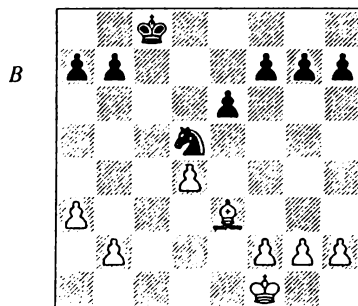
The black position is more or less ideal. All his pieces are active and he is about to create another weakness on b2 (a weakness only exists if it can be attacked), which is enough to win the game.

34 ♞d1 b4! 35 axb4 ♞xd1 36 ♞xd1 ♜xb4

White is now losing a pawn, but he could now have retained some drawing chances by giving up the d-pawn and going into a queen ending with 37 ♜c2.

Of course this is a nightmare one should not dwell upon when playing the Panov, since the aim is mate, and not a poor endgame. Still, one should remember that there are very few drawing chances in this endgame if one does not have direct counterplay. I could show examples where White drew since he was able to seize an open file, or because his queen generated immediate threats. However, these are in a sense trivial cases, and I will instead show the classical isolated pawn ending. Please note that the following example did not in fact arise from a Panov, and I have reversed the colours to make the parallel with the

Panov ending clearer – I hope nobody will be confused by this.



### Capablanca – Flohr

(colours reversed)

Moscow 1935

This position looks very promising for Black, and before this game was played I do not think anyone believed that White could hold it together. Anyone but Capablanca, that is. With his famous style, where every move is an improvement of the position, but none is a revolution, he finds a way to make the draw.

1 ♖e2 ♖d7 2 ♖d3 ♖c6 3 b3 f5 4 ♙d2 ♚f6 5 f3

Capablanca is taking control over e4, and also placing all the pawns on the opposite coloured squares from that of his bishop.

5...♙d5 6 a4 ♚d7 7 ♙c1 ♚b8 8 ♙e3 ♚c6 9 ♖c3 a6 10 h3 g6 11 h4!

Restricting Black's potential possibilities on the kingside.

11...b5 12 axb5 axb5 13 ♖d3 b4!

A serious attempt to win the game. After this White is still drawing, but only just.

14 g3 f4! 15 gx f4!

15 ♖xf4 ♜xd4 16 ♔d2 ♜xf3 17 ♖xb4 ♜d4 gives Black excellent winning chances,

15...♜e7 16 ♔d2 ♜f5 17 ♖e1!

An outside passed pawn would decide the game.

17...♜xd4 18 ♖xb4 ♜xb3 19 ♖c3 ♜c5+ 20 ♖e3 ♜b7 21 ♖b4

The rest of the game is about White stopping the knight reaching f5, from where it would support the black king, and decide the game.

21...♜d8 22 ♖e7 ♜f7 23 ♖f8! ♜d6 24 ♖xd6 ♖xd6 25 ♖e4!

Holding the draw.

25...♖e7 26 ♖e5 h6 27 ♖d4 ♖f6 28 ♖e4 ½-½

28...h5 29 ♖d4 ♖f5 30 ♖e3 e5 31 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 32 f4+ is completely drawn.

From this game one can learn two things. First of all, you need two weaknesses to win an endgame. In the previous game, b2 was a weakness, but only because there were still major pieces left on the board. In this game only d4 was weak. The second thing is more direct. If you are White, and you have a chance to escape into this endgame from an uncomfortable position, you know you can make a draw. And if you are Black you know that you should not let White get away like this, for instance by exchanging rooks or queens.

With this I want to kiss the endgames goodbye and show some great attacking games. One might claim that White is too successful in my choice of games. Well, first of all these positions are not recommended by me in the black repertoires. Secondly White *does* have an excellent score from this

type of position, provided he gets his pieces to the ideal squares.

Dizdar – Dizdarević

Sarajevo 1988

1 d4 ♜f6 2 ♜f3 e6 3 e3 c5 4 ♔d3 cxd4 5 exd4 ♖e7 6 c4 0-0 7 0-0 d5 8 cxd5 ♜xd5 9 ♜c3

This is just one of many ways to get to this position, but in this book, the subject is not transpositions, but the positions arising from them.

9...♜c6

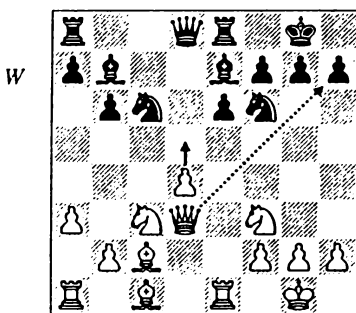
The Panov move-order to reach this position would be 1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♜f6 5 ♜c3 e6 6 ♜f3 ♖e7 7 cxd5 ♜xd5 8 ♔d3 ♜c6 9 0-0 0-0.

10 ♖e1 ♜f6 11 a3 b6 12 ♔c2 ♖b7?!

The black position might still be playable after this move, but as mentioned in Chapter 11, 12...♖a6!, preventing ♜d3, is the right move.

13 ♜d3 ♖e8? (D)

Black had to protect his king with 13...g6. Now White has a classical push in the centre.



14 d5! exd5 15 ♖g5 ♜e4

15...g6 16 ♖xe7 wins on the spot.

16 ♜xe4 dxe4 17 ♝xe4 g6 18 ♝h4

The centre has opened up, and so have the diagonals down to the black king. Black has no real defence.

18...♝c7 19 ♖b3 ♖d6

19...♖f8 loses as well after 20 ♖f4 ♝d7 21 ♜g5.

20 ♖f6

Black is defenceless.

20...h5 21 ♝g5 ♜h7 22 ♖c2 1-0

This of course looked very easy, but Black was quite a good player, with the rating of an average grandmaster. The trick employed by White has won many games, and will occur again in this chapter, I can promise. In the following game Black gets a free tempo, compared with this game, but still everything is not easy.

**Yusupov – Lobron**  
*Nussloch 1996*

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♜c3 ♖b4 4 e3 0-0  
5 ♖d3 d5 6 ♜f3 c5 7 0-0 cxd4 8 exd4  
dxc4 9 ♖xc4 b6

This is a transposition to Chapter 8, but White plays a line that is not part of the repertoire I suggest. However, the game is still a beautiful illustration of White's options in IQP positions.

10 ♖e1 ♖b7 11 ♖d3 ♜c6

11...♖xc3 12 bxc3 ♜bd7 is a little better for White, since he can put his bishop on b2 instead of g5.

12 a3 ♖e7 13 ♖c2 ♖e8

13...♖a6! transposes to the game Sturua-Kutirov (page 11), where Black has serious chances for equality. Still it is a difficult move to make, when you have got a theoretical line a tempo

up. Still it is not a very good line, so the hard decision had to be taken.

14 ♝d3 g6 15 h4 ♝d6 16 ♖g5

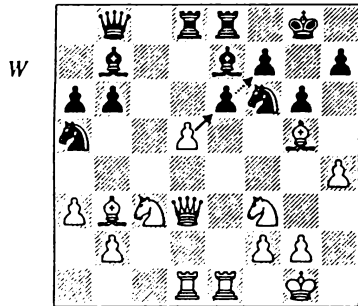
White has a slight pull.

16...♖ad8 17 ♖ad1 ♝b8 18 ♖b3 a6?

This is careless. Better was 18...♜d5 with an inferior, but playable position.

19 d5! ♜a5 (D)

19...♜xd5 20 ♜xd5 exd5 21 ♖xd5 gives White a huge attack against the black king, while Black is totally without counterplay.



20 dxe6!! ♜xb3

Black was in bad shape anyway. 20...♖xd3 21 exf7+ ♜g7 22 fxe8 ♜+ ♝xe8 23 ♖xd3 gives White very good winning chances, especially because of 23...♜xb3 24 ♖de3 ♜f7 25 ♖xf6! ♜xf6 26 ♖e6+ ♜f7 27 ♜g5+ winning both on attack and material.

21 exf7+ ♜xf7 22 ♝c4+ ♜g7 23 ♜e5!

The attack does not stop so easily. White wants more than just a pawn.

23...♜g8 24 ♖xd8 ♝xd8 25 ♝f7+!

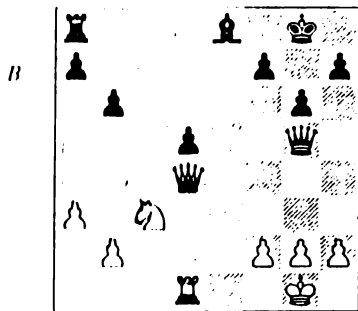
Precisely played.

25...♜h8 26 ♝xb3 ♝d4 27 ♖e3 ♖f8 28 ♖xe7 1-0

Black loses further material.

In the following game White plays in a more positional manner, but it is still central control, and in particular d5, that is important. It provides a classical example of how Black comes under pressure in IQP positions, and finds it difficult to defend precisely for a prolonged period. Just a little mistake decides the outcome.

**Velimirović – Böhm**  
Amsterdam 1976



1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♘f6  
5 ♘c3 e6 6 ♘f3 ♙e7 7 cxd5 ♘xd5 8  
♙d3 ♘c6 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♙e1 ♘f6 11 a3  
b6 12 ♙c2 ♙b7 13 ♚d3 g6 14 ♙h6  
♙e8 15 ♙ad1 ♙f8 16 ♙g5 ♙e7

White has emerged from the opening with a slight pull. Black now tries to solve his problems through exchanges.

17 ♙b3 ♘d5 18 ♙xd5!?

18 h4 is the natural move, but White has a very interesting idea.

18...♙xg5

18...exd5?! 19 ♙xe7 ♘e7 20 ♘c5 leads to a position where White is clearly better. The bishop on b7 is not worth very much currently.

19 ♙xc6 ♙xc6 20 d5!

Even though the structure will be very symmetrical after this move, Black is still some way from solving his problems.

20...exd5

20...♙xd5? 21 ♘xd5 exd5 22 ♙xe8+ ♚xc8 23 ♘xg5 does not work – naturally.

21 ♙xe8+ ♙xe8 22 ♘xg5 ♚xg5 23 ♚d4! (D)

White takes control over the dark squares and supports the advance of his h-pawn. Even though the position

is defensible here, Black's task is unpleasant.

23...♙c6 24 h4 ♚e7 25 ♘xd5

Rather than taking the pawn back, 25 h5! was an interesting option, but it seems that Black can defend head-first: 25...♙d8 26 ♘e4 f5! 27 ♘f6+ ♙f7 (not 27...♙f8 28 ♘xh7+) 28 ♘xh7 gxh5 and Black has an extra pawn, even though his position seems a bit shaky. Still, the knight is so badly placed that Black must be better.

25...♙xd5 26 ♚xd5 ♙e8 27 h5 ♚c5 28 ♚d7

White is only slightly better, of course, but an important factor in practice is creating problems for the opponent, and in doing that, White is very successful.

28...♙e7 29 ♚d8+ ♙e8 30 h6!

Putting the king under pressure. Naturally the pawn can sometimes turn out weak, but currently it is a thorn in Black's side.

30...♙f8!

Avoiding the back-rank mate.

31 ♚d7 a5?

This gives White peace to organize his attack and weakens the b6-pawn. Necessary was 31...♙c7! 32 ♚c8+ ♙e8, when it seems hard for White to avoid 33

♠d8 (33 ♖b7 ♖h5! gives Black good chances to defend as well) 33...♗e1+ 34 ♕h2 ♗c5+ with perpetual.

32 g3 g5?!

This does not improve anything at all, but 32...♠e7 33 ♖d8+ picks up the b6-pawn. Black would also lose after 32...♗xb2? 33 ♖d6+ ♕g8 (33...♠e7 34 ♠e1) 34 ♗e7 ♠f8 35 ♕g2!! (not 35 ♠d8? ♗c1+ 36 ♕g2 ♗xh6), when there is no defence against 36 ♠d8 winning.

33 ♖d3 ♕g8 34 ♖d6

The black position is now so full of weaknesses that he must be considered lost.

34...♗e2 35 ♠d2 ♗e1+ 36 ♕h2 ♗e6

There was nothing else, but the end-game does not offer any chances for resistance.

37 ♗xe6 fxe6 38 ♠d7

Taking the seventh rank. Black could have resigned here.

38...♠c8 39 ♠g7+ ♕f8 40 ♠xh7 ♠c2 41 ♠b7 ♕g8 42 ♕h3 ♠xb2 43 ♕g4 ♠xf2 44 ♕xg5 ♠f8 45 g4 e5 46 ♕h5 1-0

The following game is one of my favourites at the moment, mainly because of the brilliant combination, but also because it shows how White, by simple means, can produce a small advantage which can trouble a very strong player.

Sturua – Kutirov  
Erevan OL 1996

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♘f6  
5 ♘c3 e6 6 ♘f3 ♘e7 7 cxd5 ♘xd5 8  
♘d3 ♘c6 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♠c1 ♘f6 11 a3  
b6 12 ♘c2 ♘a6 13 ♘g5 ♠c8 14 ♖d2?!  
♘c4?

Here Black could have got the better position with 14...♘a5! – see Chapter 11.

15 ♖f4 ♘d5 16 ♖h4

This is the second best place for the white queen. The best is h3, which it reaches via d3 and sometimes also f3. From h3 the queen exerts pressure on the two ways in to the black king's position, e6 and h7. This is normally combined with a knight on e5, when sacrifices on f7, and sometimes even g6, become interesting.

16...g6 17 ♘xd5

The bishop cannot, of course, be allowed to stay on d5. Now White has a slight edge due to his bishop-pair and his extra space.

17...♘xd5 18 ♠ad1 ♖d6 19 ♘b3 f6?

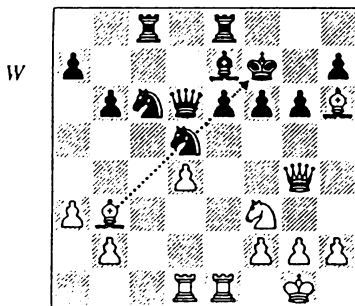
This proves to be fatal. Still, Black had a lot of difficulties. Correct was 19...♠fe8.

20 ♗g4!

Threatening to take away the defence of the d5-knight.

20...♕f7 21 ♘h6 ♠fe8? (D)

This allows a brilliant combination, but Black would still be under a lot of pressure after 21...♠g8.



22 ♖xe6!! ♗xe6 23 ♜e1

The point.

23...♗d6

Black is lost after both 23...♗xg4  
24 ♖xd5+ and 23...♗xe1+ 24 ♜xc1  
♜cd8 25 ♗e4.

24 ♖f4 ♗d8

24...f5 25 ♗h3! ♗xf4 26 ♗xh7+  
♜f6 27 ♖xd5 ♜d8 28 ♜e5 wins.

25 ♗e6+ ♜g7 26 ♖xd5 g5 27  
♗f7+ 1-0

Black is mated after 27...♜h6 28  
♖xg5+ fxg5 29 ♜e6+.

In the following game Black plays quite sensibly up to a certain point, but the important thing to note is how White is able to keep posing problems for Black, who eventually becomes careless, just when he seems to have come through the worst.

Borge – Danielsen

Danish League 1997/8

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♜f6  
5 ♜c3 e6 6 ♜f3 ♖e7 7 cxd5 ♜xd5 8  
♖d3 ♜c6 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♜e1 ♜f6 11 a3  
b6 12 ♖c2 ♖a6 13 ♖g5 ♜c8 14 ♜c1  
♜d5 15 h4!

This novelty gives Black some difficulties he had not previously encountered after 14 ♜c1.

15...♜xc3

15...h6?! 16 ♜xd5 ♗xd5 (16...exd5  
17 ♖f5! is terrible for Black) 17 ♖e4  
♗d8 18 ♖xc7 ♜xe7 19 ♗a4 would  
give White a significant edge.

16 bxc3 h6

This weakens Black's kingside, but on the other hand, he had to do something to relieve some of the pressure.

\* 1 line please

17 ♖xc7 ♜xe7 18 ♖b1 ♗d6 19  
♗c2 f5

If Black had time to take over the important light squares in the centre, this would not be a serious weakening. As it is, e6 is going to be a problem.

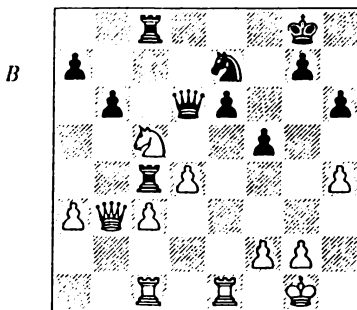
20 ♖a2 ♖c4 21 ♖xc4 ♜xc4 22  
♗b3 ♜fc8 23 ♜e5 ♜4c7 24 ♜d3

This knight manoeuvre poses Black new problems. How is he going to defend his pieces?

24...♜c4?

A tactical mistake. 24...♜f7 would have kept the black forces together. White would be a little better, but Black would have good chances of solving his problems.

25 ♜c5! (D)



25...♜8xc5?

Black should have taken his chances after 25...♗d5 26 ♜xc6 ♜4c6 27 c4!  
♜xc4 28 ♜xc4 ♗xc4 29 ♗xc4 ♜xc4 30  
♜xg7 ♜f7 31 g3, which gives White good winning chances, but Black is still fighting.

26 dxc5 ♗xc5 27 ♜xe6 ♜c6 28  
♜d1!

The rook should be used in an attack, not to protect a pawn!

28...♜h7 29 h5!

Closing in on the black king.

29...♖xc3 30 ♗d5

White should win the endgame without too much difficulty. g7 is simply too weak.

30...♖c1 31 ♖xh6+!

The final combination. The rook on c1 is picked up after a few checks.

31...gxh6 32 ♗f7+ ♔h8 1-0

Two games from the last 'normal' FIDE world championship match illustrate some important ideas in the Panov and IQP positions.

### Kamsky – Karpov

*Elista FIDE Wch (2) 1996*

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♘f6  
5 ♘c3 e6 6 ♘f3 ♗b4 7 cxd5 ♘xd5 8  
♗d2 ♘c6 9 ♗d3 ♗e7 10 0-0 0-0 11  
♗e2 ♘f6 12 ♘e4 ♗d7

Not good would be 12...♘xd4? 13  
♘xd4 ♗xd4 14 ♗c3 ♗d8 (14...♗b6  
15 ♘xf6+ ♗xf6 16 ♗c4 is awful for  
Black) 15 ♘xf6+ ♗xf6 16 ♖fd1 ♗d7  
17 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 18 ♗xh7+ ♔xh7 19  
♖xd7, which gives White strong pressure. It is not immediately apparent how Black should liberate himself. Better is 12...♗b6!?, as we shall see in the next game.

13 ♖ad1 ♖c8

13...♗b6 14 ♘xf6+ ♗xf6 15 ♗e4  
g6 16 ♗h6 ♗g7 17 ♗xg7 ♔xg7 18 h4  
gave White a slight pull in Mortensen-  
Danielsen, Danish Ch 1995.

14 ♖fe1 ♘d5

Black should try 14...♘xe4 15 ♗xe4  
g6 since White cannot get an advantage  
from 16 ♗h6 ♖e8 17 ♘e5 ♘xe5  
18 dxe5 ♗c6 19 ♗g4 ♗a5.

15 ♘c3!

Kamsky decides to fight for central control, and at the same time vacates the e4-square for other pieces.

15...♘f6

15...♖e8 16 ♘xd5 exd5 17 ♘e5  
would give White an advantage.

16 a3

This 'luxury' move makes a lot of sense, since 16 ♗g5 ♘d5 would not do much good. Another useful move was 16 ♗b1, but then 17 a3 would be natural, to have the opportunity to use the bishop on both diagonals.

16...♗c7

16...♗b6 17 ♗g5 would be uncomfortable, as e7 would be hanging after 17...♘d5 18 ♘xd5. Black only loses a pawn, but still it is no good, of course.

17 ♗g5 ♗a5? (D)

The losing mistake. However, Black was already in great difficulties, and had to watch out for 18 ♗xf6 followed by 19 d5 with a huge attack. 17...h6?! would have shown why: 18 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 19 d5! ♗xc3 (this is probably not the best, but a move like 19...♘b8 is a symptom that the patient is ill) 20 dxc6 ♗xe1 21 cxd7 and White has excellent winning chances. 17...♖fe8 was the right move, but after 18 ♗b1 Black will find it difficult to withstand White's pressure. As in the previous games, Black would be clearly worse.

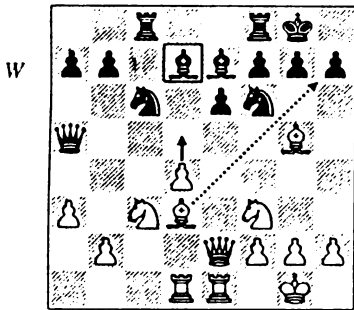
18 d5!

The thematic break carried out in a beautiful way.

18...exd5

18...♘d5 does not work. After 19  
♘xd5 Black has two options:

a) 19...exd5 20 ♗xe7 ♖fe8 21  
♗xh7+! ♔xh7 (21...♔h8 22 b4 ♗c7  
23 ♘g5 ♖xe7 24 ♗h5 gives Black no  
chance whatsoever) 22 ♘g5+ ♔g6



(22...♙g8 23 ♖h5 wins) 23 ♗d3+ ♙f5 24 ♗g3 with a winning attack, for example 24...♗a4 (trying to come to g4) 25 ♗e4+ ♙h7 26 ♗h4+ ♙g8 27 ♗f6+ winning the queen and the game.

b) 19...♙xg5 20 ♗xg5 h6 (the only try; 20...exd5 21 ♙xh7+ ♙h8 22 ♗h5 is easy) 21 b4 ♗d8 22 ♗h7 winning the exchange, and probably the game.

Also 18...♗b8 19 d6 is disgusting for Black.

19 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 20 ♙xh7+!

The point of the combination. The bishop at d7 is the victim.

20...♙xh7 21 ♗xd5 ♙xc3!

Karpov is a fighter who always seeks the line of most resistance. Still, White has a very large advantage. White is virtually winning after 21...♗c7 22 ♗d3+ ♙g8 23 ♗xd7 and 21...♗b6 22 ♗xd7, when Black cannot ruin the white pawn-structure with 22...♙xc3 because of 23 ♗d3+.

22 ♗xa5

White could have gone for complications with 22 ♗g5+, but the text is simple and very good for White.

22...♙xa5

After 22...♙xc1 23 ♗h5+ ♙g8, 24 ♗xe1! (or 24 ♙g4) is the simplest way.

23 b4 ♙g8

23...♙xb4 24 axb4 ♙g8 25 ♗d3 ♗fd8 26 ♗g5 gives White a winning attack.

24 bxa5 ♙g4

Karpov is extremely tough player to beat, and in a difficult position puts up a lot of resistance. 24...♗fe8 25 ♗b2! ♗xe1+ 26 ♗xe1 ♗c7 27 ♗c3 gives a technically winning position. Also 24...♗xa5 25 ♗d2 does not work.

25 a6!

Destabilizing the knight on c6 by giving up a pawn with very little future. Still the black position is not so easy to crack, and Kamsky had to display excellent technique to grind out the full point.

After this game, Karpov did some good preparation and solved Black's problems in his next game as Black.

### Kamsky – Karpov

*Elista FIDE Wch (4) 1996*

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♗f6 5 ♗c3 e6 6 ♗f3 ♙b4 7 cxd5 ♗xd5 8 ♙d2 ♗c6 9 ♙d3 ♙e7 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♗e2 ♗f6 12 ♗e4 ♗b6!

An improvement upon the previous game. Black is simply threatening to take the b-pawn, which Kamsky prevents by simple means.

13 a3

13 ♗xf6+ ♙xf6 14 ♙c3 ♗b4! would also have kept the balance. While 13 ♙g5 ♗xd4 14 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 15 ♗xf6+ ♙xf6 16 ♙xf6 ♗xf6 17 ♗fd1 does not offer sufficient compensation, Black is only microscopically better.

13...♙d7

13...♗xb2? 14 ♗xf6+ ♙xf6 (or 14...gx f6 15 ♗f1 ♗xd4 16 ♙xh7+!

♖h8 17 ♜xd4 ♝xd4 18 ♝h5 with a mating attack) 15 ♜c4 g6 16 ♜f1.

14 ♜fd1

The idea behind Karpov's new move is simple. White is not capable of putting the rooks on their best squares, since 14 ♜ad1 ♝xb2! would be preferable for Black. 14 ♜e5!? is suggested by Ftačnik, but he himself gives the simplest way for Black to keep the balance: 14...♙e8!? (14...♜xd4? 15 ♜xf6+ ♙xf6 16 ♝e4; 14...♝xd4? 15 ♙c3 ♝d5 16 ♜ad1 would give Black two problems: the queen's bad placement, and the threats against his king, and he would not be able to solve both) 15 ♜xf6+ ♙xf6 16 ♝e4 g6 17 ♙h6 (17 ♙e3!? ♝xb2 18 ♜ab1 ♝xa3 19 ♜g4 ♙g7 20 ♜xb7 gives White some compensation, and might be the way to put Black under pressure) 17...♙g7 18 ♙xg7 ♖xg7, where White has to be careful, since he has not yet generated any threats, but has two pawns hanging.

14...♜ad8

14...♜xd4 15 ♜xd4 ♝xd4 16 ♙c3 ♝a4 17 ♜xf6+ ♙xf6 18 ♙xf6 gxf6 19 b3! ♝a5 20 ♙xh7+ ♖xh7 21 ♜xd7 would give Black grey hair for no reason. 14...♝xb2? has not changed from the previous move.

15 ♜xf6+

15 b4!? to keep some tension was possibly a better move.

15...♙xf6 16 ♝e4 g6 17 ♙e3

Planning tricks with d5, but here they are much more benign than in the previous game.

17...♜e7!

A strong move, taking control over d5, making way for the bishop at d7 to come to c6, and preparing to bring the

knight to the active square f5. Black is probably already a little better.

18 ♜e5

18 d5 ♝xb2 is better for Black.

18...♜f5

The knight is stronger on f5 than d5. Nimzowitsch said that you should blockade the isolated pawn, which is more or less correct, but Larsen also said you should try to grab them, which cannot be wrong either.

19 ♜c4 ♝a6!

Karpov is not afraid of ghosts. Black is planning to play 20...♙b5, which would lead to exchanges favourable for Black.

20 a4

Preventing ...♙b5, but when White is defending, there are no real chances for exerting pressure any more. 20 ♜e5 is met, of course, by 20...♙b5.

20...♙c6 21 ♝f4

Threatening 22 g4.

21...♙d5

The bishop is an even stronger blockader than the knight, since from d5 it points to all corners of the board. Also the bishop could not be included in an attack on the d4-pawn, so it might as well be the blockader. 21...♙xd4?! 22 ♙xf5 ♙xe3 23 ♜xe3 exf5 24 ♜xf5 ♜xd1+ 25 ♜xd1 ♝xa4 26 ♜h6+ ♖g7 27 ♜f5+ gives White the chance of escaping with a perpetual.

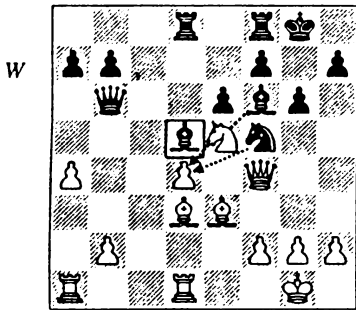
22 ♜e5

On 22 g4?? Black has 22...g5!.

22...♝b6 (D)

23 ♙xf5

White sees no other option but to give up his bishop for the powerful knight. After this, Black is better as long as he keeps control over d5, which does not seem to be a problem.



23...exf5 24  $\text{Hd2}$   $\text{Qg7}$

Karpov is taking it easy. It is hard to spot any white counterplay, and he has some weaknesses that Black can irritate.

25 h4  $\text{Hfe8}$  26  $\text{Wg3}$   $\text{Hc8}$

Black has gradually transferred all his pieces to their best squares, and now he is ready to take action.

27  $\text{Qd7}$

27  $\text{Qd3}$  is more cautious.

27... $\text{Wc6}$  28  $\text{Qc5}$

Forcing a weakness, so that he, hopefully, can use his advanced a-pawn in a constructive manner, instead of just being tied to its defence.

28...b6 29  $\text{Qd3}$   $\text{Wd7}$  30 a5

30  $\text{Qe5}$   $\text{Wb7}$  31 a5 bxa5! was possibly better, even though the b2-pawn is left weaker than the a7-pawn.

30... $\text{He4}$ !

With the idea 31... $\text{Hg4}$ .

31  $\text{Qf4}$

The attempt to complicate the game by 31... $\text{Hg4}$ ! 32  $\text{Hxa7}$   $\text{Wd8}$  33  $\text{Wb3}$   $\text{Wxb6}$  34 f3  $\text{Qxd4}$  35  $\text{Qxd4}$   $\text{Wxd4+}$  36  $\text{Hf2}$   $\text{Qxf3}$ , when Black makes decisive material gains.

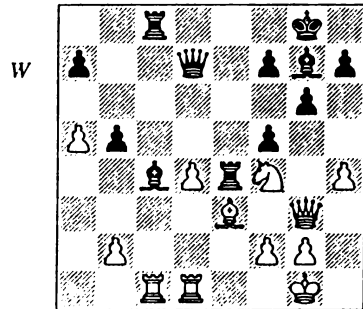
31...b5 32  $\text{Hdd1}$

32  $\text{Qxd5}$  does not help White, as the blockade on the light squares cannot

be broken. It only leaves all the white pieces tied to the defence of the d4-pawn, with no other prospects. In these kind of positions there is no chance to swindle a player like Karpov.

32... $\text{Qc4}$  33  $\text{Hac1}$  (D)

33 h5!?



33...h6!

This stops White achieving any counter-chances on the kingside with h4-h5.

34  $\text{Hc3}$  b4 35  $\text{Hc2}$   $\text{Hc6}$  36  $\text{Hdcl}$

36 d5  $\text{Hc8}$  37  $\text{Hdcl}$  b3 would give Black good winning chances, since b2 is permanently ill.

36... $\text{Qb5}$  37  $\text{Qh2}$   $\text{Qh7}$  38  $\text{Hxc6}$   $\text{Qxc6}$  39  $\text{Hc4}$

39 d5! is given by Karpov as the only move. Now Black is winning.

39... $\text{Qf8}$ !

Taking the bishop to a square with more future.

40  $\text{Qd3}$

40  $\text{Hc2}$   $\text{Qd6}$  does not give White any chance to get out of the pin in a good way.

40... $\text{Wc6}$ ?!

On the last move before the time-control Black makes a little mistake. Immediately winning was 40... $\text{Wd5}$ !

41 ♖c1 (41 ♗e5 ♜xe5 42 ♜xc6 ♜xe3 is also losing for White) 41...♗d6 42 ♗e5 ♗xe5 43 dxe5 ♜xh4+ 44 ♗g1 ♜g4.

41 d5

41 ♜c1?! ♗d6 42 ♗f4 ♜xf4 43 ♗xf4 ♜e4 and Black wins.

41...♗xd5

41...♗d6?? would lose to 42 dxe6! ♗xg3+ 43 ♗xg3 ♜xc4 44 exf7 ♗g7 (44...♜g4+ also loses) 45 ♗xh6+! ♗xf7 46 ♗e5+.

42 ♜xe4

The alternatives 42 ♗c5 ♗d6 and 42 ♗f4 ♗d6 would not give White any saving chances.

42...♗xe4 43 ♗xa7?

43 ♗c5 ♜d5 44 ♗xe4 fxe4 would give a lost ending, but White could have played 43 ♗c5 ♗xc5 44 ♗xc5

♜e7 45 ♗xe4 fxe4 46 ♜f4 when he still has some drawing chances, although they are dim.

43...♗d6!

43...♜d7? 44 ♗c5!.

44 ♗f4

44 f4 loses straight away to 44...♜d7! 45 ♗d4 ♗xd3 46 ♜xd3 ♗xf4+ 47 g3 ♗e5.

44...♜e5

White is passive and his pawns are weak, so there is in reality no defence any more. Still the breakdown now became complete.

45 ♗h3?

45 ♗e3 ♜xb2 would give the b-pawn a prosperous future, while the white a-pawn would fall or get stuck.

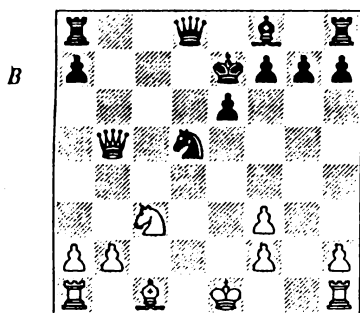
45...♜e7 0-1

Black wins a piece.

# 1 The Classical Endgame

The classical endgame variation arises from the following moves:

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4  
dxf6 5 dxc3 dxc6 6 dxf3 g4 7 cxd5  
dxd4 8 ♖b3 dxf3 9 gxf3 e6 10 ♗xb7  
dxd4 11 d5+ dxb5 12 ♗c6+ ♕e7  
13 ♗xb5 (D)



Even though this is no longer the most popular variation for White, it is very suitable for players whose style doesn't include going for the throat, who prefer a less tactical game, but who still want to play for advantage.

Players wishing to keep the position as complicated as possible should deviate with 6 d5 as White, or 9...d6 as Black.

Before I start discussing the different subjects in this ending, I would like to make it clear that if White is well prepared, Black's winning chances are reduced to a minimum. I believe no novelty can shake the pillars of this

line, but on the other hand Black does have "excellent drawing chances"; to quote Kasparov. If Black is well-prepared, he should not especially fear this line. It's true he's under the pressure of the disadvantage of the first move all the way into the endgame, but if White does not really know where to put his pieces, or in other ways breaks the unwritten 'laws' of chess, he will soon understand the disadvantages of doubled pawns.

I will try to explain what I have discovered about the following subjects:

- The important check
- The simplified endings
- The role of the bishop
- The initiative
- The role of the rooks
- Where to put the king
- The blockade

## The important check

If we proceed from the moves given above, White will soon have to make an important decision. After 13...♗d7 14 dxd5+ ♗xd5 two moves are possible: 15 ♗xd5 and 15 d5+. I think the bishop check changes the pawn-structure in such a favourable way for White that it should always be played. First of all, Black is forced to put another pawn on a dark square, and thus limit the potential activity of his bishop. Secondly, the weakening of the e6-square shouldn't be underestimated.

When the check is played, one already senses the invasion with the rooks or king via e6 in one's fingers.

### The simplified endings

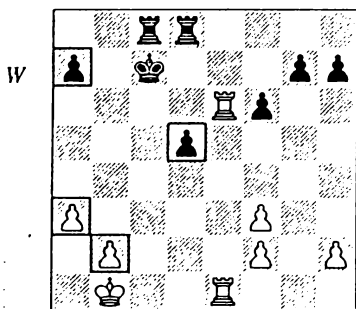
When one decides to play an opening that leads directly into the endgame, it's necessary to know which exchanges are preferable, and under which circumstances they should be carried out. The primary aim of this chapter is to discuss these issues.

I will in turn cover the pawn ending, the bishop ending, the rook ending, and the double rook ending.

Since the bishop + rook ending is very similar to the ending as a whole, I will not give it special attention.

### The king and pawn ending

First I will start with an option missed by one of the heroes of this endgame, Onishchuk.



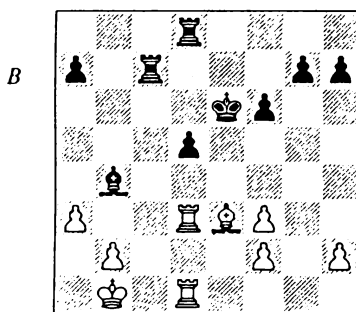
Onishchuk – Delemarre  
*Wijk aan Zee 1996*

White could now transpose into a winning king and pawn ending with:

25 ♖e7+! ♜d7 26 ♖c1+ ♔d8 27 ♜xd7+ ♔xd7 28 ♜xc8 ♔xc8 29 ♔c2 ♔c7 30 ♔d3 ♔c6 31 ♔d4 a5 32 b3

White wins by creating a distant passed pawn on the queenside after improving his position as much as possible on the kingside – very classical. Instead, Onishchuk continued 25 ♖c1+? ♔b8 26 ♜xc8+ ♜xc8 27 h3 ♜c4 28 ♜e8+ ♔b7 29 ♜e7+ ♔b6 30 ♜xg7 ♜f4 31 ♜g3, but after 31...h5 32 ♔c2 h4 33 ♜g4 ♜xf3 Black was never in danger of losing.

Here is another Onishchuk game:

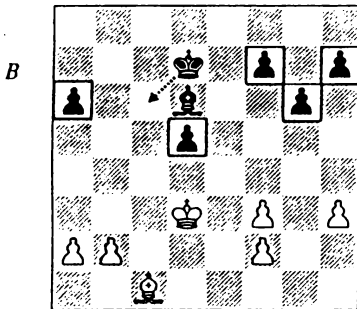


Onishchuk – Gretarsson  
*Wijk aan Zee 1996*

Here Black played the correct move 22...♙e7, but had he proceeded with 22...♙c5? he would have lost as follows: 23 ♖c3 ♜dc8 24 ♜dc1 ♙b6 25 ♜xc7 ♜xc7 26 ♙xb6! (ensuring the liquidation of all the remaining pieces) 26...♜xc1+ 27 ♔xc1 axb6 28 a4! d4 29 b4 ♔d5 30 ♔d2 ♔c4 31 a5 bxa5 32 bxa5 ♔b5 33 ♔d3 ♔xa5 34 ♔xd4 ♔b4 35 f4! and White wins. Again the distant passed pawn proved the decisive factor.

### The bishop ending

In the pure bishop ending, White has lost one of his two advantages, the initiative guaranteed by the rooks and the lead in development. The second, the possibility of creating a passed pawn on the queenside, is left to compensate for the doubled pawns on the kingside. These pros and cons are the reason why this endgame is quite drawish. I have found two examples of different set-ups where Black has completely equalized.



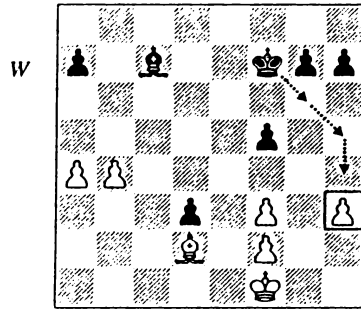
**Glattacker – Metz**  
*Baden-Baden 1991*

Having just entered the bishop ending, Black puts his king on c6, a-pawn on a6 and the rest of the pawns on light squares. This is the simplest plan, but it requires that the black king can reach c6 rather quickly. The game continued:

23... ♖e5 24 b4 ♜c6 25 a4 ♙f6 26 f4 ♙h4 27 ♖e3 ♙e7 28 ♙d2 ♙h4 29 ♜c3 f5 30 ♙c3 ♙e7 31 ♜d4 ♙f6+ 32 ♜d3

...and so on until the players finally agreed a draw. White has no way of getting around the black pawns.

If Black for some reason cannot get his king to c6 quickly enough, there is another strategy that can be employed.



**Upleger – Hohlfeld**  
*Germany 1990*

There is no way Black can prevent the birth of a passed pawn on the queenside, so he chooses to exchange a pawn, and wait. If White takes his king to the centre, the black king will attack and conquer the white h-pawn, and thereby create a dangerous passed pawn for himself, and if he keeps his king on the kingside, there is no way he can remove the blockade the black bishop can provide from b8. The game ended as follows:

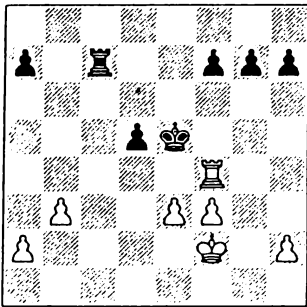
39 ♙e3 a6 40 b5 axb5 41 axb5 ♜g6 1/2-1/2

Trying to win this endgame as White is not in general a good idea, and will at best lead to a draw.

### The rook ending

It's difficult to make general comments about rook endings in this variation. If you take the endings where no

pawns have been exchanged, the ending is rather drawish. Normally the pawn-structure changes slightly when exchanges are made, but this doesn't change the assessment. The most frequent exchange is the one of rooks or bishops on e3 – and sometimes even both. This change is slightly favourable for White, and he might hope for a small advantage, but it's unlikely to be decisive unless the opponent is much weaker than oneself. Here is one example:



Adams – Morović  
Leon 1995

White has a slight advantage, because Black lacks active counterplay. The first thing White does is improve the position of his king.

27 ♖a4 ♔d6 28 h4 ♕c5 29 ♖g3 ♗b6 30 ♜b4+ ♕c5 31 ♖a4 ♗b6 32 ♜d4 ♕c6 33 ♖f4 ♜e7 34 ♜b4

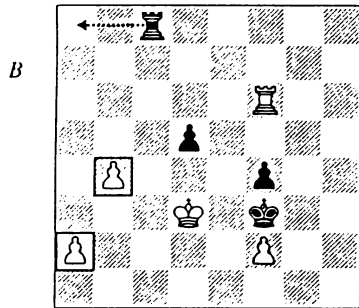
White can make no more progress without changing the pawn-structure. He will then exert combined pressure on the kingside and queenside. However, this proves to be insufficient to win, but the attempt should always be made.

34...h6 35 e4 dxe4 36 fxe4 ♜e6 37 ♜c4+ ♗b7 38 ♜c5 ♖a6 39 ♜f5 f6 40 ♜b5+ ♗c7 41 a4 g5+!

Or else 42 h5! locks the black king-side up. Next would be the invasion of the white king, and victory.

42 hxg5 hxg5+ 43 ♗f5 ♜b6 44 ♜c5+ ♜c6 45 ♖a5 a6 46 b4 ♜b6 47 ♜c5+ ♜c6 48 ♖a5 1/2-1/2

The most interesting rook endings in this opening also come after some pawns have been exchanged. The theme that is most characteristic of these endgames is the strength of White's queenside majority. Black should always be careful and not underestimate this force. In the first example Black, a strong GM, ignores this (presumably due to time-pressure) and loses.



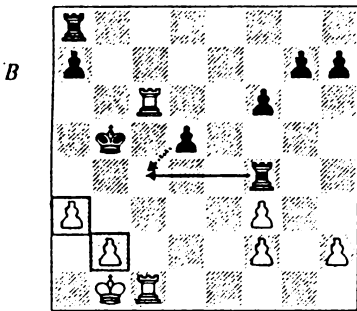
A. Sokolov – Spraggett  
Saint John Ct (2) 1988

The position should be drawn after 38...♖a8!, keeping an eye on the pawns. Instead came:

38...♜c1? 39 a4 ♜c4 40 ♜b6 ♗xf2 41 a5 f3 42 a6 ♜c1 43 b5 ♜d1+ 44 ♗c3 d4+ 45 ♗b2 ♜d2+ 46 ♗b3 ♜d1 47 a7 1-0

This might seem to be very far from the opening, but the study of simple positions makes it easier to understand more complex situations, since the same principles are valid. And here the core of the structure in the endgame is shown quite beautifully.

In the next example Black is more careful, and solves what seem to be serious problems by adopting radical measures.



Wahls – Brunner  
Biel 1994

27...♖c4!

The two rooks were generating some unpleasant threats against the black king, so one must be exchanged. The pawn on c4 limits the white pawns' ambitions, and this way Black is OK.

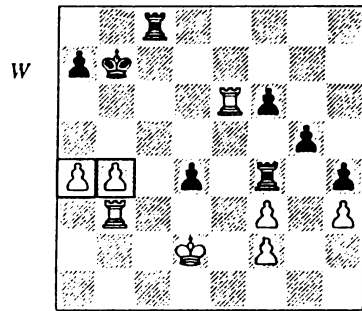
28 ♖1xc4 dxc4 29 ♖c7

The next problem arises. Black cannot hold his pawns, and so he goes for active counterplay by totally ignoring the threats on his pawns.

29...♗e8! 30 ♖xa7 ♗e2 31 ♖b7+ ♔c6 32 ♖b4 ♔c5 33 ♖b7 ♖xf2

...and Black made the draw comfortably after 48 moves.

By accurate play Black achieved a draw in this game, but normally he should be very careful about which kind of rook endgames he goes into. The following example is a fine illustration of how dangerous the queenside majority can be in a more complex rook ending.



A. Rotshtein – Neron de Surgy  
French Cht 1996

50 a5!

Starting an attack on the queenside with the pawns. This should have been stopped with 50...a6.

50...♖c3?! 51 ♖xc3 dxc3+ 52 ♔xc3 ♖xf3+ 53 ♔c4 ♖xf2

53...a6 would no longer be a simple solution to Black's problems. After 54 ♖e7+ ♔b8 (not 54...♔c6 55 ♖a7 with serious winning chances for White, due to a similar manoeuvre as in the game) 55 ♔c5 ♖xh3 56 ♔b6 ♖c3 57 ♔xa6 ♖c7 58 ♖e6 Black still has a lot of defending ahead of him.

54 ♖e7+ ♔a6 55 ♖e6+ ♔b7 56 a6+!

Starting an attack on a7 that is hard to meet.

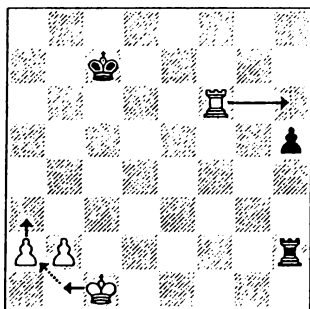
56...♔c7 57 b5 ♖f4+ 58 ♔c5 ♖f5+ 59 ♔b4 ♖f4+?

59...♔d7! 60 b6!? ♖f4+! 61 ♖b5 ♖f5+ would still have made the draw.  
 60 ♖a5 ♖f3 61 ♖e7+ ♖b8 62 ♖e8+ ♖c7 63 ♖a8

Winning the a-pawn and the game. The pawns are too far advanced to be stopped.

63...♖a3+ 64 ♖b4 ♖xh3 65 ♖xa7+ ♖d6 66 ♖f7 ♖h1 67 a7 ♖a1 68 ♖xf6+ ♖c7 69 ♖a6 1-0

In covering the rook endings I have excluded positions with uneven material. Still there is one endgame I would like to show. It is a simple win, which everyone should know. White's method of achieving victory from the following position is very instructive.



Antunes – J. Delaney  
 Thessaloniki OL 1984

36 ♖h6 ♔d7 37 a3 h4 38 ♖b1 h3  
 39 ♖a2 ♖h1 40 ♖b3 h2 41 a4 ♖c7 42  
 ♖b4 ♖b7 43 ♖b5 ♖a7 44 ♖h7+ ♖b8  
 45 a5 ♖a8 46 ♖b6 1-0

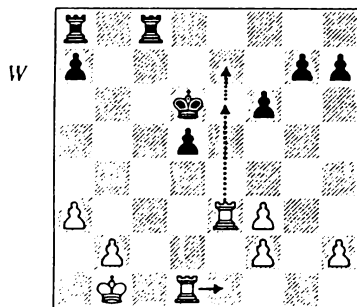
The double rook ending

This ending is the most natural, since Black often wants to exchange bishops

to take the pressure off a7. But White also has his advantages from the exchange. Penetration by the rooks is far more possible once the bishop no longer protects the most important squares. If White does penetrate, he gets either a combined attack on the king and the 7th rank pawns, or ties down one or both of Black's rooks to the defence of a weak pawn (often a7).

Judging from practical results, this endgame is rather dangerous for Black – White has a 67% score. This is mostly because Black exchanges into difficult endgames, believing exchanges as a whole enhance his chances to equalize. Sometimes they do, but often not.

The main question one has to put to oneself before deciding whether one should exchange bishops is: is my rook more or less active than my opponent's, and who has the safer king? Also the speed with which one can attack the opponent's pawns is important. I will give some practical examples. The first example is a position where White has the initiative on account of his active rooks.



Ji. Nun – Timmer  
 Dortmund 1988

In *Informator* Dreev calls this position, in which Black intends 23...♖c4, equal, but this is simply not true. The white rooks are far more active and will penetrate along the e-file. Still, Black has some practical drawing chances, if he can get his rooks activated. Maybe the endgame is even a draw, but Black surely has to suffer a lot to get it.

23 ♖de1 ♖c4!

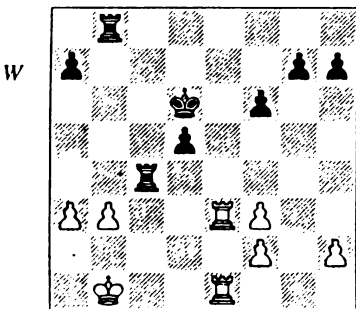
Still the best move though. Black has to activate his rooks whatever the cost.

24 b3?!

I don't like this move. There is no reason to weaken the pawn and the c3-square. Even though these are only potential weaknesses, I would have preferred to start the attack immediately with 24 ♖c6+, instead of this loss of tempo – see the theory section.

24...♖b8? (D)

A very unfortunate decision. The rook is not really doing anything on c4, and neither is the rook on b8. Black could have done much better with 24...♖h4!? or 24...♖f4 25 ♖e6+ ♖c5 26 ♖1e3 g5 27 ♖e7 h5.



25 ♖e6+ ♖c5 26 ♖b2 a5

Not good enough, but 26...♖h4 27 ♖c1+ ♖d4 28 ♖d1+ ♖c5 29 b4+ ♖c4 30 ♖c6+ ♖b5 31 ♖c7 shows how easily the black king can be targeted in a combined attack.

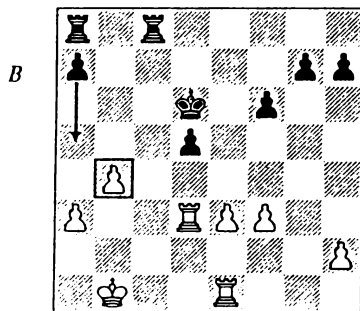
27 ♖a6 ♖b5 28 ♖e7 ♖f4 29 ♖c7+ ♖d4 30 a4

Winning the a-pawn, and thus creating the traditional two 'roadrunners'.

30...♖b8 31 ♖xa5 ♖xf3 32 ♖b5 ♖xf2+ 33 ♖a3 ♖e8 34 h4 ♖e4 35 ♖xg7 d4 36 ♖xh7

White went on to win due to his queenside passed pawns and his beautiful endgame play in general.

In the next example Black sacrifices a pawn to activate his rooks, using the slightly early advance of the b-pawn as a hook, and grabbing onto it he gains counterplay in instructive fashion.



Dolmatov – Christiansen  
Lucerne Wcht 1993

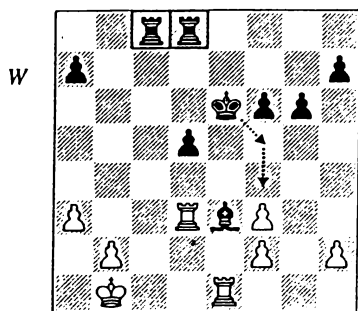
24...a5! 25 ♖ed1!

This is preferable to 25 ♖b2 axb4 26 axb4 ♖a4 27 ♖b3 ♖ca8, when his active rooks guarantee Black sufficient counterplay to draw.

25...axb4 26 ♖xd5+ ♔e6 27 axb4

Now Black could have regained his sacrificed pawn by 27...♖a3 28 ♖5d3 ♖cc3!, after which the draw is only a handshake away.

The next game is one of the highest-level examples of this variation.



Karpov – Kramnik  
*Linares 1993*

26 ♖dx3+?!

Black's rooks are ideally placed on the d-file (helping the d-pawn) and on the c-file (preventing the white king from helping stop the d-pawn), so the activity of White's rooks is not superior in this position. This is why he should have settled for a less ambitious approach with 26 fxe3.

26...♔f5!

The king can be both safe and active on the f-file.

27 ♖e7 ♔f4 28 ♖1e3 a5 29 h3

29 ♖xh7 ♖h8 30 ♖xh8 ♖xh8 would only favour Black.

29...h5 30 ♖7e6 ♔g5 31 ♖a6 d4

Black is better due to his activity. All Black's pieces are playing, while the white king is totally passive.

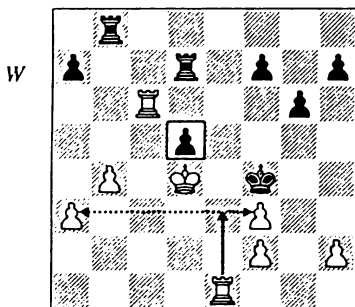
32 f4+!

White has to be careful. Greed would have been punished: 32 ♖xa5+ ♔h4 33 ♖d3 ♔xh3 34 ♖a6 ♔g2 35 ♖xf6 ♔xf2 36 ♖xg6 ♔c2 37 ♖b3 d3 and Black wins.

32...♔f5 33 ♖xa5+ ♔xf4 34 ♖d3 ♔e4 35 ♖d2 g5

Black is better here, but White can defend.

The last example shows a slightly different situation. Here the black king is unable to create counterplay on the f-file, mainly because his rooks are tied down to the defence of the d-pawn. It is also a final illustration of the three important elements in the double rook endgame: activity, activity and activity.



Namyslo – W. Mack  
*Oberliga Württemberg 1993*

27 ♖e3!

Maintaining a tight defence, while the king and the other rook tie down the black forces to the defence of d5.

27...f5 28 ♖c5 ♖bd8 29 a4

The next step. The queenside majority is used to create a passed pawn.

29...g5 30 b5 h5 31 a5 g4 32 ♖b3!

The rook now serves both aggressive and defensive purposes.

32...gxf3 33 ♜cc3 ♜e7 34 ♜xf3+ ♜g5 35 b6

Black now gets a few checks, but the white king is totally safe.

35...♜e4+ 36 ♜c5 axb6+ 37 axb6 ♜c4+ 38 ♜b5 ♜f4 39 b7

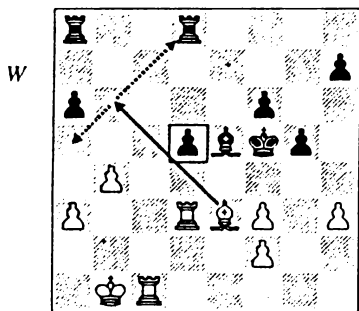
The rest is easy and needs no comment.

39...d4 40 ♜c6 ♜xf3 41 ♜xf3 d3 42 ♜xd3 ♜xd3 43 b8♖ 1-0

That was the end of the simplified endings. Now we turn to the various general elements in the ending.

### The role of the bishop

The role of the bishop naturally differs from White to Black. For White there are two important ways of using the bishop. The first one is the natural development square e3, from where it threatens a7 and has the following latent manoeuvre:

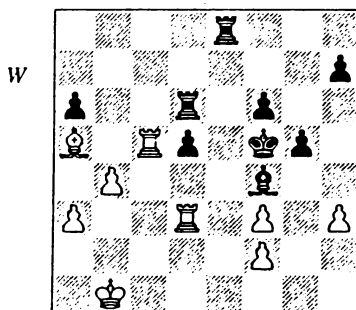


Onishchuk – Summerscale  
Groningen 1995

26 ♖b6! ♜d6 27 ♖a5!

White takes the d8-square from the queen's rook, and thereby makes the defence of d5 very hard.

27...♜e8 28 ♜c5 ♖f4! (D)



A good decision by the young Englishman (an IM at the time). Defending the pawn would tie down his pieces and almost surely lead to defeat. Instead he gives up the d-pawn, and in return gets his rook to White's second rank.

29 ♜xd5+ ♜xd5 30 ♜xd5+ ♜e5!  
31 ♜d1

After 31 ♜xe5+ ♖xe5 the black king is ready for the dish of the day.

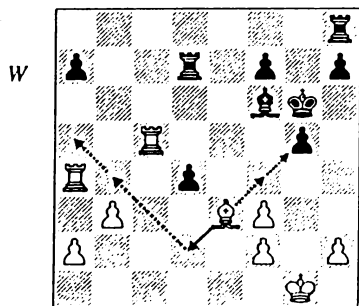
31...♜e2 32 ♖b6 ♖e5 33 ♜d3

Onishchuk believes he is better here, and although he might be right, Black was still able to make a draw by at the right time sacrificing a pawn on the kingside to push the h-pawn.

The second role the bishop can play is closely connected to the black d-pawn. Alone or together with the king, it can block the pawn, and at the same time keep an eye on the key squares b4 and a5 on the queenside, helping the advancement of the queenside majority,

and the equal important f4 (g5), a key square for the black counterplay.

In the first example the white king is far from the centre, so the bishop has to do the job itself.



Reinderman – Khenkin  
Antwerp 1993

25 ♖d2 ♜e8 26 ♔f1

Preventing the invasion of the rooks.

26...♜e6?!

Probably Black should have insisted on bringing his rooks into White's position by 26...♜de7!? 27 ♜a6 ♜e6! 28 ♜xa7 ♜e2. After the text-move he slowly loses ground.

27 ♜ac4 d3 28 ♜c6 ♔f5

Not 28...♜c2? 29 ♖c3 ♜c6 30 ♜xc6 fxe6 31 ♔e1, when White has won time.

29 ♜xe6 fxe6 30 ♔e1

The king prepares to take over the job of watching the d-pawn, so the bishop can be used more aggressively.

30...♖d4 31 a4

The standard advance of the queen-side majority.

31...e5 32 b4 ♜d6 33 b5 ♜h6?

This way of creating counterplay is too slow. It would have been better to start eliminating White's pawns by

33...a6! 34 ♖c3 axb5 35 axb5 ♖b6!, after which Black is no worse.

34 ♖c3!

Actually the start of an attack on a7 – a new twist to an old theme.

34...♖xc3+ 35 ♜xc3 ♜xh2 36 ♜c7 h5

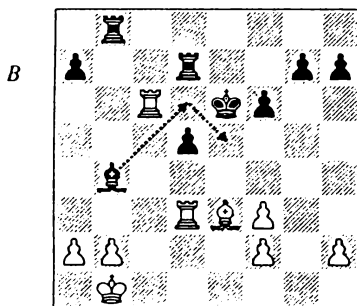
36...e4 37 fxe4 ♔xe4 38 ♜xa7 d2+ 39 ♔xd2 ♜xf2+ 40 ♔c3 would not have saved Black. The white pawns are too far advanced.

37 ♜xa7 d2+ 38 ♔d1 ♜xf2 39 b6 ♜xf3?!

But also 39...♜f1+ 40 ♔xd2 ♜b1 41 a5 wins comfortably for White.

40 ♜f7+ ♔g4 41 ♜xf3 ♔xf3 42 b7 1-0

For Black it is very easy. In the positions with the pawn already on f6, the bishop should go to e5, while with no pawn on f6, this is the most logical square for the bishop (see Onishchuk-Summerscale, where Black's bishop clearly had a lot to do with him making the draw). A lot of the strategic fight has to do with the placement of the black bishop. A single illustration:



El-Kher – Hartvig  
Copenhagen Ch 1998

22...♙e7?!

Better was 22...♙f7 to keep a way home open for the bishop.

23 h3!

A standard move, stopping the black bishop gaining a tempo, and thereby making the manoeuvre ...♙b4-d6-e5 much harder.

23...♞bb7 24 a3?

A tactical mistake neither of the players understood during the game. Correct was 24 ♖a6! ♙f7 25 a3 ♙f8 26 b4 with a lot of problems for Black.

24...♙a5??

Missing that after 24...♙d6! Black is fine, because of 25 ♞xd5 ♙xa3.

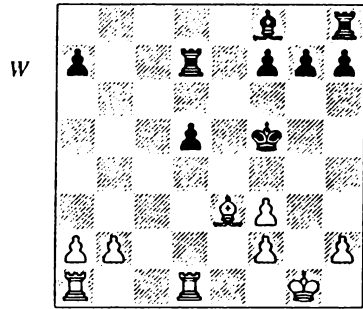
25 ♞c5

White wins a pawn, and later he won the game.

### The initiative

I could also have called this section 'Activity'. In this line only a few strategic concepts occur. I have tried to illustrate the importance of the pawn-structure in the endgames, the fight for and against a black bishop on e5 and the idea of penetrating via the e- and c-file with the rooks. What I have not shown is how the principles of development are sometimes neglected, and how this can lead to the loss of the initiative.

In the following example we are still in the opening, and the main aim should be to develop the pieces. Instead White decides to begin an immediate attack, which unfortunately ends with his rook stranded on the fourth rank, running around without finding a really useful square.



P.H. Nielsen – Filippov  
Gistrup 1996

20 ♞d4? ♙c5! 21 ♞f4+ ♙e5 22 ♞c1 ♙b6!

Preparing the advance of the d-pawn, which White is by no means ready to meet.

23 ♞h4 d4 24 ♞e4+ ♙f5 25 ♞f4+ ♙g6 26 ♞g4+ ♙f6 27 ♞f4+ ♙e7 28 ♞e4+ ♙d8

A shelter from the storm. Black is better, and now regroups before pushing for the win.

29 ♙d2 ♞d5! 30 a4 ♙d7 31 ♞ce1 ♙c5 32 ♞e5 ♞xe5 33 ♞xe5 ♙d6 34 ♙f4 ♙c6 35 ♙f1 f6 36 ♞e4 g5

With the plan 37 ♙d2 ♞b8 and curtains.

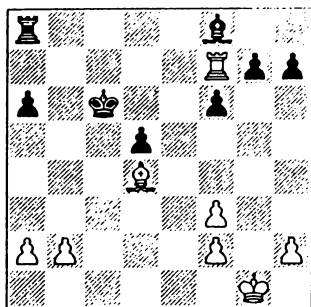
37 b4 ♙xb4 38 ♙e3 dxe3 39 ♞xb4 ♞e8 40 f4 g4

...and Black won.

A similar mistake, and also the most common in this opening, is when Black plays ...♞ac8+ followed by ...♙c5 (see the theoretical section).

In this line, as in most openings, you have to develop your pieces before attacking. As shown, even GMs sometimes break that rule.

B



### Headlong – Summerscale British League (4NCL) 1996/7

The fight for the initiative is a different matter. In the position above White has used up his ways of combining threats with improvement of his pieces. He seemingly has the black kingside tied down and can now improve his king, which suffers from having castled the wrong way. Black takes advantage of White's weak kingside structure by a spectacular double pawn sacrifice to activate the rook and bishop and take over the initiative.

26...♖b8

With the threat of 27...♖b4 to disturb the bishop. White prepares to meet this with 28 ♕xf6.

27 b3 ♗e8

With the idea ...♗c8-c1-d1 followed by a march by the d-pawn.

28 ♖f1 ♕b4!

The sacrifice. Black does not fear the white kingside pawns, which might be good for defence in a rook ending, but are utterly harmless in a race.

29 ♗xg7 ♗e1+ 30 ♖g2 ♗d1 31 ♕xf6 d4 32 ♗g4 ♕c5

There is no point allowing the rook to get behind the pawn.

33 b4 ♕b6 34 a4 d3 35 b5+!

White realizes that he has to make a draw in a rook vs rook and bishop endgame, so he starts to eliminate pawns.

35...axb5 36 axb5+ ♖xb5 37 ♕g5 d2 38 ♖h3 h5 39 ♗h4 ♕xf2 40 ♗xh5 ♖c4 41 ♗h8 ♕b6 42 ♕xd2 ♗xd2

Black won this endgame, which is known to be a theoretical draw. This game illustrates how Black sometimes can sacrifice pawns to get the initiative.

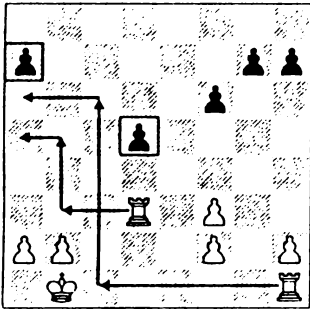
### The role of the rooks

As always, one should keep the rooks on open files, behind passed pawns, on the 7th rank and so on. The normal role of the rooks is valid, but for White there are some extra possibilities due to his lead in development. Actually these manoeuvres are often the only way to keep the initiative in the opening.

First I would like to say something about where to put the rooks as Black. If he's not put under pressure he should place them on c8 and d8, where they will do the most good. Sometimes he will have to put the one rook on d7 for defensive purposes and hope to get the other rook active via the b- or c-file. Sometimes, as in the game Ji.Nun-Timmer (see page 23). Black's counterplay lies in the manoeuvre ...♗c8-c4-f4 (or h4). When to do what is always difficult, and I can't provide any smart answer. I'll just hope the samples in this chapter will help you in making decisions.

When White castles queenside (as he should), there are two active rook manoeuvres to put Black under pressure. Everything starts from the key-move

$\text{♖d1-d3!}$ . Now both rooks have a future.



As indicated the whole way through this chapter, and in the diagram, the a7- and d5-pawns are White's only sensible objects of attack. The rook-manoeuvres indicated are the most aggressive ways of putting pressure on these two pawns, and the black king, which is often on e6.

After kingside castling the manoeuvre  $\text{♖c1-c6-a6}$  is still possible, and often strong, as we shall see in the next game sample (*D*). But there is also another possibility of attack, which we met in an ill-advised form in the game P.H.Nielsen-Filippov (page 28). I speak of the manoeuvre  $\text{♖d1-d4-f4/a4/g4}$ . More about this manoeuvre can be seen in the theory section.

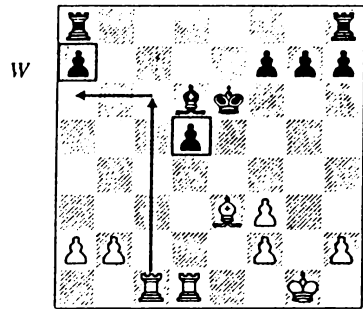
(see following diagram)

21  $\text{♖c6! ♖hc8}$  22  $\text{♖a6}$

With a combined attack on the sixth rank and by the other rook on the d-pawn. Black found no defence.

22...g5?

This loses tactically. It was necessary to improve the position of the queen's rook with a little tactical trick:



Bochnickar – Najgebauer  
Slovakian Cht 1995

22...  $\text{♖ab8!}$  23  $\text{♗d4 ♖b7}$  24  $\text{♖xa7? ♖xa7}$   
25  $\text{♗xa7 ♗e5!}$  with a dead draw.

23  $\text{f4 h6}$  24  $\text{f5+!}$

Winning the house.

24...  $\text{♚e7}$  25  $\text{♖xd5 ♗f4}$  26  $\text{♗c5+}$   
 $\text{♖xc5}$  27  $\text{♖xc5}$  1-0

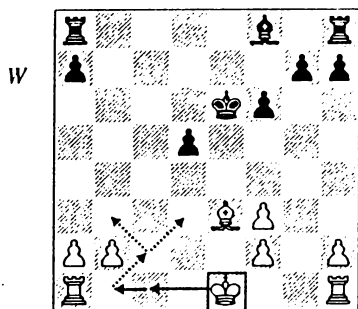
### Where to put the king

For White there are two strategies, of which I find one clearly preferable to the other.

The king should go to b1 quickly to make room for the rooks, and then later, when the rooks are as far improved as possible, it should go to d3 or b3, from where it can go anywhere. I really dislike kingside castling, as it puts the king out of play. There is, however, a third option, which is even worse: keeping the king in the centre (see following diagram).

18  $\text{♚e2?}$

The king should not be taken to the centre before development has been completed. Now it becomes an object of attack, and is not able to fulfil any defensive duties on the queenside.



Losev – Zhachev  
Moscow 1990

18...♙d6!

This is not possible normally, as White would frustrate Black's plans by bringing a rook to e1. However, with White's king on e2, there is nothing for Black to worry about.

19 ♖hc1 ♜hb8 20 ♜c2 a5!

The queenside majority is not a strength in this game, but a weakness to attack.

21 ♜g1 g6 22 ♔d3 ♙e5 23 ♙c1?

23 ♙d4 is better, hoping to draw, although the position is still very difficult.

23...♜b4 24 h3 ♜h4 25 ♜h1 a4 26 ♔e2 ♜b8 27 ♜d1 ♜b6 28 ♜d3 ♜hb4! 29 ♔f1 ♙xb2 30 a3 ♜c4

...and Black went on to win.

For Black a different strategy has to be employed. The king should be a more active piece, although this sometimes can be dangerous too. For example, when White has played a3 and b4, an active manoeuvre could be ...♔c6-d6-c6-b5-a4, sometimes even giving up the d-pawn on the way. Another square from which the king can be active is f5. Sometimes it's necessary to

be careful and withdraw the king to f7. It all depends on the position.

### The blockade

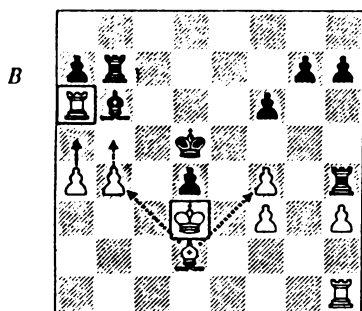
The three most important elements in this opening are the queenside majority, the initiative and the blockade. These three elements prove relevant in most games.

When I speak of the blockade, I naturally mean the blockade of Black's d-pawn. It can be successfully blocked by the king, the rook and/or sometimes the bishop. Here I shall consider the blockade by rook and king. The case of the bishop is covered in 'The role of the bishop' on page 26.

First, though, I want to explain why the d-pawn is often successfully blocked on d4 (and not too often on d3). First of all, it's on the bishop's colour, and thereby limits its potential activity. Also the blockade-square (with the pawn on d4) is a light one, and with the absence of light-squared bishops and knights, it's very hard to challenge this kind of blockade.

With the pawn on d3 other guidelines are valid, and will be dealt with as and when the position arises.

In the following diagram Black's position is on the edge of collapse. The blockade of the d-pawn limits his bishop beyond what White normally could dream of. The rook on a6 is a thorn in Black's side, which prevents him from organizing a defence against the advance of the queenside majority. Also the white bishop on d2 is doing an excellent job in protecting both the queenside and the kingside pawns.



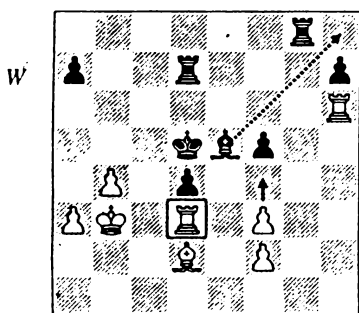
Lerner – Rogozenko  
Berlin 1994

37...f5 38 a5 ♖c7 39 ♖c1

Exploiting the exposed king.

39...♗d6 40 ♖c4 ♖d7 41 ♖xd4+  
♜e6 42 b5 ♜e7 43 ♖axd6 1-0

Naturally it would have been a different matter if the bishop had protected the d-pawn from somewhere along the e5-h8 diagonal, or even preferably, from e3 or some other active square. This is the case in the following example, where the role of blockader now has been given to a rook.



Onishchuk – Gretarsson  
Wijk aan Zee 1996

The success of the blockade is always evaluated by two factors: how the blockading piece benefits, and whether the blockader succeeds in winning the pawn. With the rook as a blockader one cannot talk about any benefit to the rook, but on the other hand it exerts a constant attack on the pawn.

32 f4 ♗b8?

Keeping an eye on f4, but this is an unfortunate strategy. It would be correct to keep the d-pawn safely protected with 32...♗h8! 33 ♖dh3 (33 f3 ♖g6 offers no problems for Black) 33...♖g2 34 ♖xh7 ♖xh7 35 ♖xh7 ♗f6!, when Black should make the draw easily. White should not be tempted by 36 ♖xa7? ♖xf2 37 ♜c2 ♜e4, when the blockade is gone, and the d-pawn suddenly is a very dangerous attacking weapon.

33 f3

This is the key move, preventing ...♜e4 by Black. Meanwhile, the white king covers c4, and the pawns on f4 and b4 limit the black king to d5, if it wants to protect the pawn itself.

33...♖g6 34 ♖h1!

White could win a pawn by 34 ♖xg6? hxg6 35 ♗c3 ♜c6 36 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 37 ♗xd4 ♗xf4 38 ♗xa7 g5 but Black would then easily draw. In the worst case he can defend with the king in the corner vs bishop and 'wrong' rook's pawn.

34...a6 35 ♖e1 ♜c6 36 ♖e8 ♗c7 37 ♜c4

The rook and king put irksome pressure on the black pawn.

37...♖gd6 38 a4 ♜b7 39 ♖f8 ♖d5 40 ♖f6 ♗b6 41 ♗c1 ♗c7?! 42 ♗f2 ♖7d6 43 ♖f7! ♖d7 44 ♖xh7 ♗xf4 45 ♖xd7+ ♖xd7 46 ♗xd4

White went on to win.

## The Theory of the Classical Endgame

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♟f6  
5 ♟c3 ♟c6 6 ♟f3 ♟g4 7 cxd5 ♟xd5  
8 ♟b3 ♟xf3 9 gxf3 e6 10 ♟xb7 ♟xd4  
11 ♟b5+ ♟xb5 12 ♟c6+!

12 ♟xb5+ is inferior, as the black king ends up on a better square after the exchanges. 12...♟d7 13 ♟xd7+ ♟xd7 14 ♟xd5 1/2-1/2 Rosito-Ginzburg, Villa Gesell 1997.

12...♟e7 13 ♟xb5 ♟d7

13...f6!? transposes to the main line after 14 ♟xd5+ ♟xd5 15 ♟xd5 exd5 16 ♟e3. The only difference is that the move-number is decreased by 1 relative to the main line. It seems there are no promising alternatives for White. This way Black can avoid facing the line with kingside castling. But on the other hand, probably Black should be hoping for that.

On the other hand, 13...♟xc3?! is not really a playable alternative to 13...♟d7, though the possibilities are far from exhausted. 14 bxc3 and now:

a) 14...♟d7 15 ♟b1! (an improvement at the time) 15...♟d8 16 ♟e3 ♟xb5 17 ♟xb5 ♟d7 18 ♟e2 f6 19 ♟d1! (exchanging Black's only active piece leaves him defenceless) 19...♟xd1 20 ♟xd1 ♟d7 21 ♟b8 ♟c6 22 ♟xa7 g5 23 a4 and White won in the game Fischer-Euwe, Leipzig OL 1960.

b) 14...f6?! seems to lose by force: 15 ♟a3+ ♟f7 16 ♟b7+! (an improvement on 16 ♟d1 ♟c8 17 ♟d7+ ♟g8, when Black has reasonable counter-chances, Christiansen-Shamkovich, USA 1981) 16...♟g8 17 ♟d1 ♟c8 18 ♟xc8 ♟xc8 19 ♟xf8 ♟xf8 (19...♟xf8

20 ♟d7 doesn't leave Black any hope of developing his h8-rook: 20...♟xc3 21 ♟d2 ♟c8 22 ♟b1 and after doubling on the seventh rank, White can slowly improve his position, with Black unable to offer a lot of resistance) 20 ♟e2 h6 21 ♟d7 ♟f7 22 ♟hd1 a5 23 ♟d8+! ♟h7 24 ♟xh8+ ♟xh8 25 ♟d8+ ♟h7 26 c4 and the passed pawn decides, Kerker-Fahimi, Hamburg 1997. Very impressive play by White.

c) 14...♟d5 (if 13...♟xc3 is playable at all, this is the key move; compared to 14...♟d7 the queen occupies a far superior square) and now:

c1) 15 ♟b1!? ♟xf3 (the difference from the Fischer game, without which Black would have gained little) 16 ♟g1 ♟e4+ (seems best; 16...♟xc3+ 17 ♟d2 ♟f3 18 ♟b4+ ♟d8 19 ♟d1+ and White wins; 16...h6 17 ♟e3 a6 18 ♟c5+ ♟d8 19 ♟a5+ ♟c8 20 ♟d1 with a winning initiative) 17 ♟e3 a6 18 ♟b7+ ♟xb7 19 ♟xb7+ ♟e8 20 ♟e2 and White has a dangerous initiative for the pawn.

c2) 15 ♟xd5?! (if this were forced, the entire ending should be evaluated as better for Black; compared to the main lines, White has a weak pawn on c3, and no real compensation for this) 15...exd5 16 ♟e3 ♟e6 17 ♟b1 ♟d6 18 ♟d2 ♟hb8 19 h3 ♟xb1 20 ♟xb1 ♟b8 21 ♟xb8 ♟xb8 22 ♟d3 a6, Schenkerik-Szep, Balatonbereny 1996. White has reached a bad ending, with only slim chances of a draw.

14 ♟x♟5+

14 ♟a5 really doesn't make much sense. The only reason for accepting the weakness on f3 is quick development and the initiative. By using a move to avoid exchanges, valuable

time is lost. 14...f6 15 0-0 ♖xc3 16 hxc3?! (accepting another weakness in unjustified optimism) 16...♗f7 17 ♗a6? (ignoring the need for development, and providing Black with the ideal square for the bishop; after 17 ♙e3 White would, at most, be slightly worse) 17...♙c5 18 ♙f4 ♞hc8 19 ♞ab1 ♙b6 20 ♗g2 ♗c6 21 ♞fc1 g5 22 ♙g3 g4 23 ♗d3 ♗xf3+ 24 ♗xf3 gxf3+ 25 ♗xf3 e5 with a clearly better endgame for Black, Onishchuk-Dreev, Yalta rpd 1995. He has no weaknesses and his bishop is much stronger than its counterpart.

14 ♗b3?! (also illogical) 14...f6 15 ♙d2 ♖xc3 16 ♙xc3 ♗f7 17 ♞d1 ♗c6 18 0-0 ♙e7 19 ♞d3 ♞hd8 20 ♞fd1 ♞xd3 21 ♞xd3 ♞d8 22 ♗d1 ♞xd3 23 ♗xd3 h6 24 ♗e4 ♗c7 results in a completely level position, Namyslo-Seeger, Giengen 1987. Only stubbornness made White lose this game.

#### 14...♗xd5 (D)

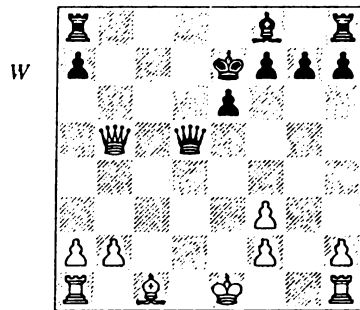
14...exd5? 15 ♗b4+ ♗e8 16 ♗d4 gives White a clear advantage according to Fischer. After 16...f6 17 0-0 ♞c8 18 ♞d1 ♞c5 19 ♙f4 ♞c4 (19...♗f7 20 ♞ac1 ♞xc1 21 ♞xc1 is no alternative; neither is 19...♙d6 20 b4 ♞c4 21 ♗xd5 ♞xf4 22 ♗xd6 ♗xd6 23 ♞xd6 ♞xb4 24 ♞e1+ ♗f7 25 ♞d7+ ♗g6 26 ♞ee7 with an easily winning endgame) 20 ♗xc4 dxc4 21 ♞xd7 ♗xd7 22 ♞c1 ♙c5 23 ♞xc4 White has a pawn for nothing, S.Hill-L.Jones, Adelaide jr Wch 1988.

Now White has three options: castling kingside, castling queenside without interposing 15 ♙g5+, and with 15 ♙g5+ interposed.

A: 15 ♗xd5 exd5 16 0-0 34

B: 15 ♗xd5 exd5 without 16 0-0 35

C: 15 ♙g5+! 36



A)

15 ♗xd5 exd5 16 0-0 ♗e6

The only move that enables Black to solve the problem of developing his kingside pieces.

17 ♞e1+ ♗f5 18 ♙e3

18 ♞d1!? might give some chances for an advantage, as Black must either return with his king, or play the 'wrong' rook to d8. 18...♞d8! (18...♗e6 19 ♙e3 is better for White, since Black can't play the normal rook manoeuvre to d7) 19 ♙e3 ♞d7 20 ♞ac1 (20 ♞d4? is a classic mistake, attacking before achieving full development; White also soon found himself in a worse position after 20...♙c5 21 ♞f4+ ♗e5 22 ♞c1 ♙b6 23 ♞h4 d4 24 ♞c4+ ♗f5 25 ♞f4+ ♗g6 26 ♞g4+ ♗f6 27 ♞f4+ ♗e7 28 ♞c4+ ♗d8 29 ♙d2 ♞d5 30 a4 ♗d7 in P.H.Nielsen-Filippov, Gistrup 1996; White hasn't achieved the traditional initiative, and the d4-pawn is becoming a strong asset) 20...♙e7 21 ♞c4!? (it's difficult to decide whether it's preferable to keep the rook on d1, where it's keeping an eye on d5, or on c1, from where it could be used more aggressively) and now 21...g5! is the best way to protect the king. White might still enjoy a slight initiative, but

Black should not fear this, since his chances are close to even.

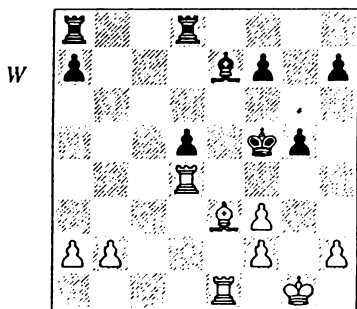
18...♙e7

18...♙b4!? is an interesting move, not yet tried in practice.

19 ♖ad1

19 ♖ac1!? ♜hc8?? (19...♙f6 20 b4 is preferable, with unclear consequences) 20 ♜xc8 ♜xc8 21 ♙xa7 ♙f6 22 ♖d1 d4 23 ♖d2 with an extra pawn in the endgame, Buchweitz-E.Schmid, 2nd Bundesliga 1988.

19...♜hd8 20 ♖d4 g5! (D)



Black has no problems.

21 ♖ed1 ♙e6 22 ♜e1 ♙f5 23 ♖ed1 ♙e6 24 ♜e1

Now Black should play 24...♙f5 with a draw. Instead in A.Ivanov-Sei-rawan, USA Ch (Durango) 1992, Black took risks with no real chances of winning: 24...♙c5?! 25 ♙xg5+ ♙f5 26 ♙xd8 ♙xd4 27 ♖d1!, and went on to lose in the end.

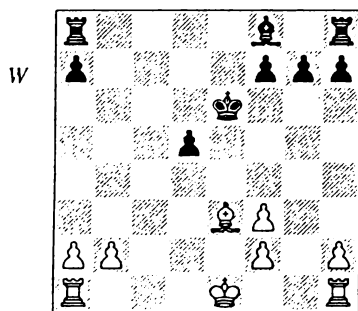
B)

15 ♜xd5 exd5 16 ♙e3

16 ♙f4 ♙d7!? (16...♙e6 has also been played, but here it makes less sense, since White has not decided upon the placement of his king, and

not blocked the e-file with his bishop) 17 0-0-0 ♙c6 18 ♙b1 ♙d6 (this original king manoeuvre equalizes easily) 19 ♖d4 ♙xf4 20 ♜xf4 f6 21 ♜g1 ♜hg8 22 ♜b4 ♜ae8 23 ♜c1+ ♙d6 24 ♜a4 ♜e2 25 ♜c2 ♜e1+ 26 ♜c1 ♜e2, Rechlis-Khuzman, Tel-Aviv rpd 1996.

16...♙e6 (D)



17 0-0-0

17 ♙e2 ♙d6 18 ♖ac1 ♜hc8 19 h3 ♙e5 gives Black more than enough, Siero-M.Martinez, Buenos Aires 1995. Black would have liked to interpose ...♙b4 and a3, but you can't have it all!

17 0-0 ♙e7 (17...♙b4!? 18 a3 ♙e7) 18 ♜fe1 ♙f5 transposes to Line A.

17 ♜g1 ♙d6 18 ♜xg7 ♙e5 19 ♜g4 ♙xb2 and Black is without worries, I.Rogers-Adams, London NatWest 1988.

17 ♜c1 ♙b4+ 18 ♙e2 ♜hc8 19 ♙d3 a6 (19...a5 20 h3 a4 21 ♙d4 g6 22 ♜hg1 h5 23 a3 ♙d6 24 ♜ce1+ ♙d7 25 ♜c1 ♙f4 26 ♜xc8 ♜xc8 27 ♙c3 ♜c4 28 ♖d1 ♙c6 29 ♜e1 ♙d6 30 ♙d4 ♙d7 31 ♜b1 ♜c8 32 ♜e1 1/2-1/2 Hofmann-Henzner, Hessen 1994) 20 a3 ♙d6 21 ♜he1 ♙f5 22 h3 ♙e5. The white king is misplaced on d3, while

Black has achieved the desired set-up. White should be able to hold a draw, but failed in Rajcsanyi-Ju.Horvath, Budapest wöm 1991.

17...♙b4

17...♞c8+?! 18 ♖b1 ♙c5 19 ♞he1 ♙xe3? (19...♜d6 20 ♙f4+ ♜c6 21 ♞c1 ♖b6 22 ♞e2 gives White an advantage, but Black had to go in for this; note that if White had interposed ♙g5+!, this line would be winning after 21 ♞e6+) 20 ♞xe3+ ♜d6 21 ♞a3 ♞c7 22 ♞a5 winning a pawn and the game in Franco-Onat, Lucerne OL 1982.

18 ♖b1!

18 a3 ♞hc8+! (the right rook; the other rook is doing fine defending the a-pawn for the time being) 19 ♖b1 ♙c5 20 ♞he1 ♙xe3 21 ♞xe3+ ♜d6 22 ♞ed3 ♞c5 is completely equal) 21...♞c4 22 ♞d2 ♞b8 23 ♞ed1 ♞b5 24 ♞d3 g5 25 ♞1d2 f5 26 b3 ♞h4 27 ♖b2 a5 ½-½ Kalinichev-Komarov, Novosibirsk 1989. Probably White shouldn't be unhappy with a draw in this position. The ending is drawish, but Black would be the one pressing.

18...♞hd8

18...♞hc8 19 ♞d3 ♞c7 20 ♞hd1 ♞d8 21 a3 ♙e7 (21...♙a5 22 ♞b3 gives White a little something) 22 ♙d4 f6 with equal chances.

19 ♞d3 ♞d7

Obviously the best. The rook belongs on this square, where it can defend Black's second rank and help the d-pawn simultaneously.

20 ♞c1

20 ♞b3?! (the other rook should be developed first) 20...♙d6 21 ♞c1 ♖f5 22 h3 ♞b8! (exchanging White's potentially most dangerous piece) 23 ♞xb8 ♙xb8 24 ♙d4 f6 and Black was

doing fine in Laczó-Ju.Horvath, Hungarian Cht 1991/2.

20...♞b8 21 ♞c6+ ♖f5 22 ♞a6 ♞bb7 23 h3 ♙e7 24 ♙d4 f6 25 ♙e3 ♙d8 26 ♞a4 a5 27 ♖c2 ♞b5 28 b3 ♙c7

Black has solved all his problems, Benko-Schwalfenberg, 2nd Bundesliga 1995/6.

C)

15 ♙g5+!

I believe White should play this check (at least if he is planning to castle queenside). It forces Black to weaken his second rank defence (the king currently protects f7, while g7 becomes harder to protect), and put a pawn on the bishop's colour. Also the e6-square is unprotected. Potentially White will penetrate via this square with his rooks or king.

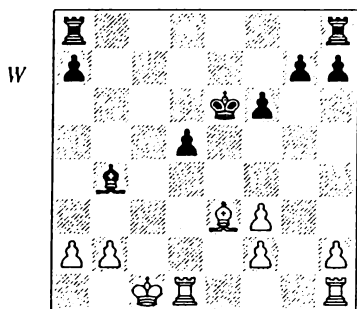
15...f6 16 ♞xd5 exd5 17 ♙e3 ♖e6

17...♖f7?! is inferior. The king has to protect the d-pawn, and also help in the defence of the queenside later. The only advantage is that White cannot gain a tempo on the e-file, but this is hardly a major advantage given that the king normally goes towards the queenside, where it belongs, when driven off the e-file. 18 0-0-0 ♞d8 19 ♞d3! (no good is 19 ♙xa7 ♞a8 20 ♙b6 {20 ♙c3 ♞xa2 21 ♖b1 ♞a5} 20...♞xa2 21 ♖b1 ♞a6) 19...♞d7 20 ♞hd1 ♖e6 21 a3! (this wonderful move stops Black developing his bishop to a useful square) 21...♙e7 22 ♞c3 ♞hd8? (22...♞b8 was better) 23 ♞c6+ ♙d6 24 h3 with a big advantage for White, Dolmatov-Lechtynsky, Hradec Králové 1981.

18 0-0-0 ♙b4 (D)

On 18...a5?! White should proceed with his development with 19  $\text{Hd3!}$ .

18... $\text{Hc8+?}$  (this attempt to solve Black's problems at once meets a tough fate; it is better simply to develop – most likely he should bring his king's rook into play before thinking of exchanges) 19  $\text{Cb1 } \text{Ac5}$  20  $\text{He1 } \text{Cd6}$  (20... $\text{Axe3}$  21  $\text{Hxe3+ } \text{Cd6}$  22  $\text{Hde1}$  is very similar to 18... $\text{Ab4}$  19 a3  $\text{Hac8+}$ ; the difference of the a-pawn being on a2 or a3 is not so major) 21  $\text{Af4+ } \text{Cc6}$  22  $\text{He6+ } \text{Cd7}$  23  $\text{He2 d4}$  (23... $\text{Cc6}$  24  $\text{Hc2!}$  isn't any better) 24  $\text{Ae3 } \text{He8}$  25  $\text{Hed2}$  and, as often happens when Black neglects his development, the d-pawn is lost, Antunes-J.Delaney, Thessaloniki OL 1984.



19  $\text{Cb1!}$

Or 19 a3 and now:

a) 19... $\text{Hac8+?}$  (the wrong rook; now the a-pawn becomes exposed for no reason at all) 20  $\text{Cb1 } \text{Ac5}$  21  $\text{He1 } \text{Axe3}$  22  $\text{Hxe3+ } \text{Cd6}$  23  $\text{Hde1 } \text{Hhd8}$  (23...d4 24  $\text{He7 } \text{Hhd8}$  25  $\text{Hxa7 d3}$  26  $\text{Hxg7 d2}$  27  $\text{Hd1 } \text{Ae5}$  28  $\text{Hc7+ } \text{Af4}$  29  $\text{Hc2}$ , with a winning position in Sievers-Krug, Bundesliga 1989/90) 24  $\text{He6+ } \text{Cc7}$ , Onishchuk-Delemarre, Wijk aan Zee 1996. Now we have

reached the first diagram on page 19. White could now win with 25  $\text{He7+!}$ .

b) 19... $\text{Aa5!}$  is an interesting idea, only tested once, where White went berserk with 20 b4?, forcing the bishop to a better square, and giving Black a hook for his attack to latch onto. Instead 20  $\text{Hd3!}$ , to activate both rooks, would maybe have given him the better chances. To be honest, then I find the position very difficult to evaluate, but my senses tell me that Black is doing better here than in the 19  $\text{Cb1!}$  line.

c) 19... $\text{Hhc8+}$  20  $\text{Cb1 } \text{Ac5}$  21  $\text{He1 } \text{Axe3}$  22  $\text{Hxe3+ } \text{Cd6}$  23  $\text{Hde1 } \text{Hc4!}$  with equal play according to ECO, but studying the position has convinced me that White is in fact doing a lot better here. 24  $\text{He6+}$  (best) 24... $\text{Cc5}$  25  $\text{Aa6 } \text{Hf4}$  26  $\text{Hc1+ } \text{Cd4}$  27  $\text{Hc3}$  and White retains a certain amount of pressure, A.Rotshtein-Neron de Surgy, French Cht 1996.

19  $\text{Hd3 } \text{Hhd8}$  20 a3 (20  $\text{Cb1}$  is preferable, transposing to the main line) 20... $\text{Hac8+}$  21  $\text{Cb1 } \text{Ac5}$  22  $\text{He1 } \text{Cd6!}$  (22... $\text{Af7}$  23  $\text{Hc1 } \text{Axe3}$  24  $\text{fxe3 } \text{Hxc1+}$  25  $\text{Axc1}$  is preferable for White, according to Kramnik) with equal play, Karpov-Kramnik, Linares 1993. 23  $\text{Af4+ } \text{Cc6}$  24  $\text{He6+ } \text{Cb7}$  25  $\text{Ae3 d4}$  26  $\text{Af4 } \text{He8}$  would be one way to confirm that verdict.

19... $\text{Hhd8}$

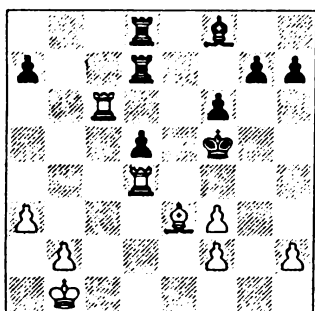
19... $\text{Hhc8}$  20  $\text{Hd3 } \text{Hc7}$  21  $\text{Hhd1 } \text{Hd8}$  22 a3  $\text{Ae7}$  and now 23  $\text{Hb3!}$  is Onishchuk's suggestion, by which White keeps the initiative.

20  $\text{Hd3 } \text{Hd7}$

20...a5!? – Onishchuk.

21  $\text{Hc1 } \text{Hd8}$  22 a3  $\text{Af8}$  23  $\text{Hc6+ } \text{Axf5}$  24  $\text{Hd4!}$  (D)

B



With this move White activates his rook and delays Black's counterplay. White is clearly better here.

**24...♖b8 25 ♖a4 ♖bb7 26 h3**

Always a useful prophylactic.

**26...♙d6 27 f4!**

Stopping the bishop getting active. The price of the weakened pawn is worth paying.

**27...♙b8 28 ♖c5 ♕e6 29 ♖c2 ♖d6 30 b4 ♙c7 31 ♖d3 ♙b6 32 ♖c1 d4?**

Since the blockade is very powerful, and the pawn is eventually lost, this is a decisive mistake. After 32...♖f5 Black still has reasonable drawing chances.

**33 ♙d2 ♖d5 34 ♖a6 ♖h5 35 ♖h1 ♖d5 36 a4**

The winning plan.

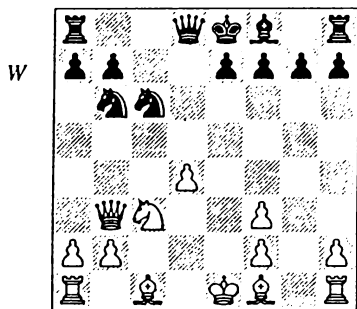
**36...♖h4 37 f3**

We have reached the starting position in 'The Blockade' section (p. 32), from the game Lerner-Rogozenko, Berlin 1994.

## 2 Avoiding the Endgame

Those who do not wish to defend the endgame we examined in the previous chapter often avoid it as follows:

1 e4 c6 2 c4 d5 3 exd5 exd5 4 exd5  
 5 f6 6 c3 dxd5 7 f3 c6 8 d4  
 9 g4 10 b3 e3xf3 11 gxf3 d6!? (D)

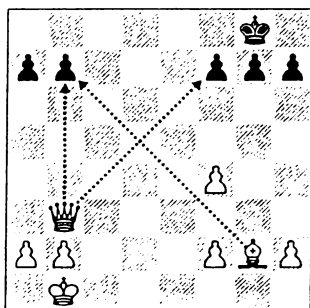


However, White should have the better chances in this middlegame due to his bishop-pair. On the other hand Black has many tactics, and because of this usually good counter-chances. There are two distinct structures that arise most often, and they come from two different main lines.

### Themes in the 10 e3 line

The structure (with a few key pieces added) in the line I recommend for White looks like this (D):

The white pawn-structure is obviously wrecked, but this has its advantages too. The bishop belongs on the a8-h1 diagonal, and the queen is ideally



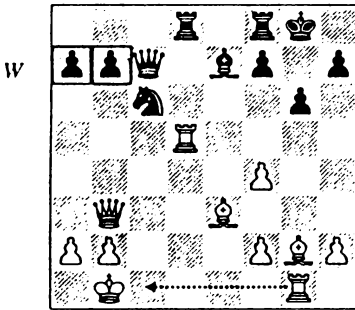
placed on b3. From these squares they combine in attack on the black pawns on b7 and f7. For Black this will always be uncomfortable, because the elimination of this pressure is hard, since he has parted with his light-squared bishop. On the other hand White has some weaknesses on the dark squares, especially f4 and h2, and in some positions also b2, with mating threats.

Here is an example of the strong pressure White can exert on the light squares (see diagram on the next page):

White is planning e1c1, attacking c6 and indirectly b7 and a7. Black does not find a way to meet this, and, moreover, an even better opportunity arises for White.

18...xd5 19 e3xd5 d7?!

Planning to secure counterplay with ...f5+ followed by ...b4 with threats against the white king and the bishop on d5, but there is a serious flaw. Black should play 19...d6,



**Koch – Hauchard**  
*Narbonne 1997*

although he remains with the inferior position after 20 ♖c4!.

20 ♔e4!

Taking complete control of the light squares, and preparing an attack against the black king. Black is already far worse.

20...♞d8?

20...♜g7 was better, though White still has a dangerous initiative after 21 f5.

21 f5 ♜g7

21...♞a5 to remove the queen from its ideal square does not work, due to the loss of time. White wins in superb style: 22 ♖c3 ♞c6 23 fxg6 hxg6 24 ♔xg6! fxg6 25 ♞xg6+ ♜f7 26 ♖g7+ ♜e8 27 ♖g8+ ♔f8 28 ♞e6+ ♞c7 29 ♖g6#.

22 fxg6 hxg6?

Black could still put up a lot of resistance with 22...fxg6 but it is easy to make a mistake when you are under pressure.

23 ♔h6+!!

A nice blow.

23...♜xh6

To enter the middle of the board is also painful. White wins after 23...♜f6

24 ♖f3+ ♜e6 (24...♜e5 25 ♔g7+!) 25 ♔xg6!, when the black king soon will find eternal rest.

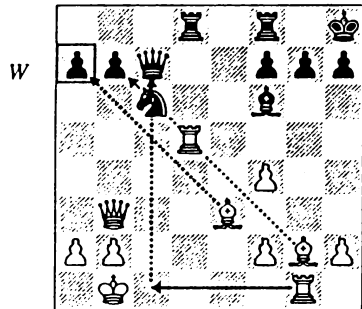
24 ♖xf7 ♖d1+

When a move like this is forced, it is no surprise that Black is lost.

25 ♞xd1 ♞xd1+ 26 ♜c2 ♞d6 27 f4 ♞f6 28 ♖g8 ♜h5 29 ♔f3+ 1-0

Mate follows.

In the next example, White's queen-side pressure pays off. It shows clearly how difficult it is to eliminate the pressure generated by the bishop on g2.



**Yagupov – Petrov**  
*Briansk 1995*

19 ♞c1

The threats are, among others, to play 20 ♞dc5 and 20 ♔xa7. Black tries to play on the kingside, which seems like the only way of reaching sufficient counterplay. Black's position is very difficult, yet it is symptomatic for the line in general.

19...♖c8!

19...♞xd5 20 ♔xd5 ♖d7 21 ♖c4! ♞a5 22 ♖b4 ♞d8 23 ♔xf7 gives White preferable chances – not due to the extra pawn, but because White has easier

access to the black queenside in an endgame than Black has to the white kingside.

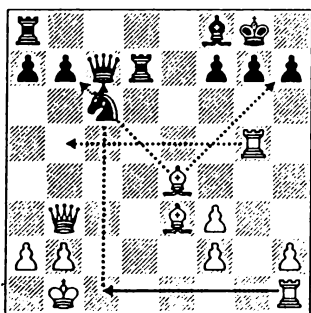
20 ♖b5 ♖g4 21 ♙xc6 bxc6 22 ♙xc6 ♖g1+ 23 ♚c1 ♗xh2 24 ♗a4 ♙c8?

24...♙a8! would make it painful for White to win the a-pawn. An example is 25 ♙a5?! ♙fb8!, when Black has excellent counterplay.

25 ♗xa7 ♙xc1+ 26 ♙xc1 h5 27 ♗c5 ♚g8 28 ♗xh5

White has won a pawn, and Black suffered for 20 further moves before resigning.

Quite often, White's winning plan in the 10 ♙e3 line is to win a pawn on the queenside, and then promote his extra pawn. This may happen via an exchange of the knight on c6. The following example shows a way for White to prevent counterplay on the files that are thereby opened.



Rachels – L. Jones  
Adelaide jr Wch 1988

19 ♙c1

The pressure on c6 is obvious. Even though it does not seem too obvious

how White should break through, the pressure is smothering for Black. There is no counterplay, and no easy way to get relief. That is why White is successful, and wins a pawn.

19...♗d8

19...♗xh2 20 f4! with the plan ♙h1 is hard to meet. 19...g6!?, to develop the bishop, might be slightly better though.

20 ♖b5!

After this move there is no way for Black to hold on to material equilibrium.

20...♙a5

Of course 20...♖b8? does not work because of 21 ♙xc6, while 20...♗c7 is met by a simple combination winning a pawn: 21 ♙xb7! ♗xb7 22 ♗xb7 ♙xb7 23 ♙xc6.

21 ♗c3 ♙c6 22 ♙xc6 bxc6 23 ♗xc6

The rook on b5 was not only important in winning the pawn, but now creates a front shield for the white king. Black slowly improves his position, but it is lost.

23...♙e7 24 ♗c2 h6 25 a3

Creating a safe haven for the king, away from the b-file.

25...♙f6 26 ♚a2 ♗e7 27 ♗e4

Of course exchanges would favour White, but this move is also a simple centralization which cannot be bad.

27...♗d8 28 ♙c2

Simple prophylaxis.

28...♖b8 29 ♙xb8 ♗xb8 30 ♗c6!

Threatening ♗c8+.

30...♙d8 31 ♙xh6 ♗xh2 32 ♙e3 ♖b8 33 ♗c7

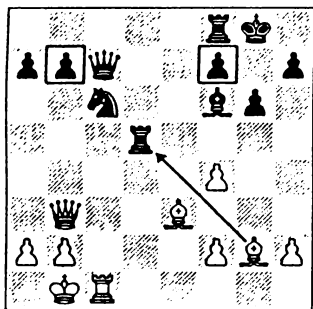
Exchanging the unimportant pawn on f3 for Black's last defence, the pawn on a7.

33... ♖b5 34 ♙xa7 ♜d5+ 35 ♜c4  
 ♜xf3 36 ♙e3 ♜f5 37 ♙c1 g6 38 ♜b3  
 ♜g7 39 ♜c7 ♙e5 40 ♜c5 1-0

Black lost in time in this position, in which his drawing chances are slight.

Normally I would like to show some games where Black won due to his counter-chances, but unfortunately, these games do not really exist. Black only wins in these positions when White makes a blunder of some kind.

So the next example is a successful liquidation of the white pressure, resulting in a draw.



Lautier – Illescas  
 Ubeda 1997

In this position White must make a difficult decision. Should his queen or his bishop be brought to the centre? The answer is simple, as I see it.

20 ♜xd5?!

This is not the answer. After this Black finds ways to get relief. If White had played 20 ♙xd5! he would exert pressure against b7, c6 and f7, from which it is not so easy to find relief, as seen in the previous examples.

20... ♜d8 21 ♜b5 a6

Black improves his defence with tempo.

22 ♜a4 ♜d6!

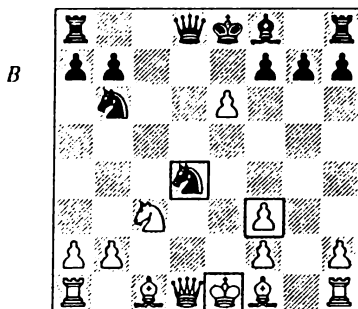
Simple chess. Black is organizing his pieces in a way that makes it easy to take control of the d4-square. After this Black has no problems.

23 ♙e4 ♜d7 24 ♜b3 ♜g7 25 ♜c4  
 ♜d4 26 ♜d1 b5 27 ♜c5 ♜e6 28 ♙f3  
 1/2-1/2

### Themes in the 10 d5 line

10 d5 is more popular at top level, even though 10 ♙c3 seems to give White better prospects, and 10 d5 is only enough for equality.

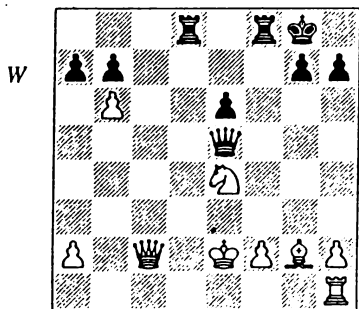
This is the start position in the main line after 10 d5 ♜d4 11 ♜d1 e5 12 dxe6 (D).



This structure gives chances for a totally different game to that investigated above. The f-file is about to be opened, and this is the basis for a direct attack on the f3-pawn. If this is assisted by the knight on d4, the result might be an assault on the white king. These are the main prospects that attract Black to the 9... ♜b6 line. In the diagram Black has two options, which

seem to be of almost equal value, 12...fxe6 and 12...♙c5!?. The latter was successful employed by Shirov against Greenfeld (see the theory section).

The following example of what can happen in this variation is mainly chosen to scare White into sticking to 10 ♙e3.



L.B. Hansen – Kuijf  
Grested 1990

22 ♙b1?!

A mistake. White should not worry so much about the development of his rook when he had a chance to hang on to his advanced pawn with 22 bxa7! ♙b5+ 23 ♙e3. This should be a little better for White – see the theory section.

22...♙xh2

The obvious drawback of White's last move.

23 ♙f1 axb6 24 ♙xb6?

The decisive mistake. The rook is much needed in the defence of the first rank. Black now takes immediate action. Better is 24 ♙b3 ♙h6 25 ♙xb6 ♙a8 26 ♙xb7 ♙xa2 27 ♙b3 ♙a5 28 ♙c3 ♙h5 29 ♙e1 ♙e5 (29...♙af5!?

would give a lot of chances to play for a win) 30 ♙xe5 1/2-1/2 Kestler-Hermann, Bundesliga 1982/3.

24...♙c8 25 ♙b2 ♙f4! 26 ♙g1

Forced since 26 ♙xb7 loses at once to 26...♙c1+ 27 ♙e2 ♙g4+.

26...♙c1+ 27 ♙f1 ♙xf1+ 28 ♙xf1 ♙xe4 29 ♙b3?

A little extra mistake, but White is also suffering after 29 ♙xb7 ♙h1+ 30 ♙e2 ♙g2 31 ♙b6!, though this at least offers some resistance.

29...♙d4! 30 f3 ♙xf3+ 31 ♙xf3 ♙xb6 0-1

I was a spectator on this game. And frankly, it didn't seem like my countryman had a lot of fun...

## The Theory when Black Avoids the Endgame

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 ♘c6 6 ♘f3 ♙g4

6...e6 7 ♙g5 leads to a line favouring White – see Chapter 3.

6...g6 7 ♙g5 ♙g7 8 ♙xf6 exf6 9 c5 should give White an edge, and is similar to lines in Chapter 3.

6...♙e6 7 c5 g6 8 ♙b5 ♙g7 9 ♘e5 ♙d7 10 ♙xc6 bxc6 11 0-0 gives White a slight edge, Anand-Miles, Wijk aan Zee 1989.

7 cxd5 ♘xd5 8 ♙b3

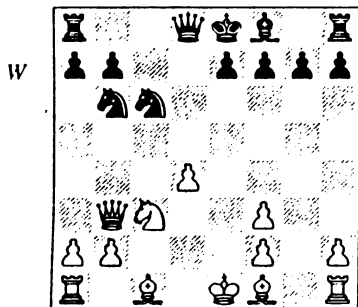
8 ♙e2 e6 results in a standard position where Black has achieved smooth development and succeeded in getting his bishop to the active outpost on g4. Black is equal after 9 0-0 ♙e7 10 ♙b3 ♙b6!.

8 ♙b5 ♙c8 9 0-0 e6 10 h3 ♙h5 11 g4 ♙g6 12 ♘e5 ♙d6 13 ♘xd5 exd5 14 ♙e1 0-0 didn't give White any

advantage at all in the game del Rio-Gomez Esteban, Spanish Ch (Ponferrada) 1997.'

8...♙xf3 9 gxf3 ♖b6!? (D)

9...♗xc3? 10 bxc3 ♜b6 11 ♜xb6 axb6 12 ♖b1 virtually wins for White, Plaskett-Kaufman, London 1998.



With 9...♖b6 we have reached a crossroad. My recommendation is 10 ♙c3, but also 10 d5 enjoys a lot of popularity.

A: 10 d5 44

B: 10 ♙c3 47

A)

10 d5

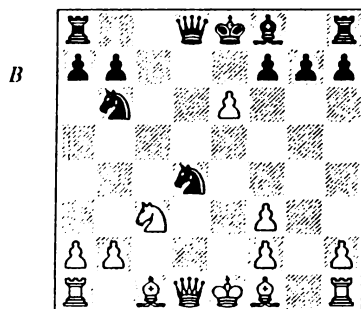
This has been played many times, but it is not the best from a practical point of view. Black simply has all the fun!

10...♗d4 11 ♜d1

11 ♙b5+!? ♗d7 12 ♜a4 ♗xf3+!? (12...♗xb5 13 ♜xb5 g6 has also been played, and is completely safe: 14 0-0 ♙g7 15 ♖e1 0-0 16 ♙g5 ♙f6 17 ♙xf6 exf6 18 ♖ad1 ♗c5 left Black very close to equality in Dolmatov-Diachkov, Russian Ch 1996) 13 ♖e2 (13 ♖f1! is untested, but probably best; the e2-square is vacant for the queen after 13...♗c5 14 ♙f4 a6 15 ♙xc5 axb5)

13...♗fe5 14 ♙f4! ♗g6?? (14...a6! 15 ♙xc5 axb5 16 ♜d4 ♗xc5 17 ♜xc5 ♜d7 gives Black the better game; true, he has problems developing, but an extra pawn and the forever exposed white king are important elements as well) 15 ♙g3 a6 16 ♙xd7+ ♜xd7 17 ♜xd7+ ♗xd7 18 ♗a4! 1-0 Carlier-Boersma, Amsterdam 1987.

11...c5 12 dxe6 (D)



Now:

A1: 12...fxe6 44

A2: 12...♙c5!? 47

Instead 12...♜f6?! is poor: 13 ♙b5+! ♗xb5 14 exf7+ ♗xf7 (14...♜xf7 15 ♜c2+ ♙e7 16 ♜xb5+ ♗d7 17 ♜xb7 seems crushing too) 15 ♜b3+ ♜e6+ 16 ♜xc6+ ♗xc6 17 ♗xb5 ♙b4+ 18 ♗c2 ♗d5 19 ♙c3 and Black doesn't have sufficient compensation for the pawn, and lost in Bichsel-Preissmann, Swiss Ch 1988.

A1)

12...fxe6

The best move, albeit a little dull.

13 ♙c3

This is an ambitious move. You have to be very up to date with theory, and it

is likely that your opponent will be well prepared. It is safest simply to develop with 13  $\text{♖g2}$ :

a) 13... $\text{♗h4}$  14 f4  $\text{♞d8}$  15 0-0  $\text{♞d7}$  16  $\text{♙e3}$   $\text{♝f5}$  17  $\text{♗b3}$ . White has emerged from the opening with a clear plus, due to the two bishops and the weaknesses on the light squares in the black camp. However, Black can avoid catastrophe if he continues with 17... $\text{♗h6}$  instead of 17... $\text{♗g4}$ ? 18  $\text{♝h1}$   $\text{♙d6}$  19  $\text{♞g1}$   $\text{♜xc3}$  20  $\text{fxe3}$   $\text{♗f5}$  21  $\text{♙e4}$   $\text{♗f6}$  22  $\text{♞g5}$  0-0 23  $\text{♞ag1}$   $\text{♗h6}$  24  $\text{♙f3}$   $\text{♞e8}$  25  $\text{♜e4}$  1-0 Greenfeld-Kuijff, Munich 1992.

b) 13... $\text{♙c7}$  14 0-0 0-0 15 f4  $\text{♗d7}$  16  $\text{♗d3}$   $\text{♞ad8}$  17  $\text{♗e4}$   $\text{♙f6}$  (17... $\text{♙b4}$ ! 18  $\text{♗xb7}$   $\text{♙xc3}$  19  $\text{bxc3}$   $\text{♜e2+}$  20  $\text{♝h1}$   $\text{♜xc3}$  is totally level) 18  $\text{♗xb7}$   $\text{♗xb7}$  19  $\text{♙xb7}$   $\text{♜c2}$  20  $\text{♞b1}$   $\text{♜a3}$  21  $\text{bxa3}$   $\text{♙xc3}$  22  $\text{♙e3}$  with a very small advantage for White, even though ECO calls it equal, Kindermann-K.Müller, Bundesliga 1990/1.

### 13... $\text{♙c5}$

13... $\text{♜f5}$ !? is a perfectly reasonable alternative to the critical piece sacrifice. 14  $\text{♗b3}$   $\text{♝f7}$  15  $\text{♞d1}$   $\text{♗c7}$  16  $\text{♙xb6}$   $\text{axb6}$  17  $\text{♜c4}$   $\text{h6}$  18  $\text{♙c4}$   $\text{♞e8}$  19  $\text{♝f1}$   $\text{♙c5}$  left Black with a better position in Schikor-Poenisch, Germany 1993, but then again, White's play could be improved.

### 14 b4

14  $\text{♙g2}$  looks slow, and is not to my taste. There is no reason to get to this position, and then play this sluggish move. 14... $\text{♗h4}$ ! (immediately taking action) 15 0-0  $\text{♙d6}$  16 h3  $\text{♜f5}$  17  $\text{♜b5}$ ?! (losing time on making a silly exchange; more careful is 17  $\text{♗b3}$  0-0 18  $\text{♗xe6+}$   $\text{♝h8}$  19  $\text{♗c4}$   $\text{♗f6}$  20  $\text{♗g4}$   $\text{♗f7}$  21 f4  $\text{♜c4}$  22  $\text{♙c1}$   $\text{♜h6}$  23  $\text{♗f3}$

$\text{♙xf4}$   $\frac{1}{2}$ - $\frac{1}{2}$  Malaniuk-Yudasin, USSR Ch (Moscow) 1991) 17... $\text{♞d8}$  18  $\text{♜xd6+}$   $\text{♞xd6}$  19  $\text{♗e2}$   $\text{♝f7}$  20  $\text{♞fd1}$   $\text{♜d5}$  21  $\text{♞d2}$   $\text{♞hd8}$ , Winants-Adams, Wijk an Zee 1995. Black's knights are in no way inferior to White's bishops, and his structure and king-position are preferable. Adams went on to win.

### 14...0-0

After 14... $\text{♙xb4}$ ?! the king will soon find itself stuck in the centre. The exchange of queens is naturally good for White's health: 15  $\text{♗xd4}$ !  $\text{♗xd4}$  16  $\text{♙xd4}$   $\text{♜d5}$  17  $\text{♞c1}$   $\text{♞c8}$  18  $\text{♝d2}$  0-0 19  $\text{♙d3}$   $\text{♞fd8}$  20  $\text{♞hd1}$   $\text{♞c6}$  21 a3  $\text{♙a5}$  (21... $\text{♙xa3}$  22  $\text{♞b1}$   $\text{♜b4}$  23  $\text{♜b5}$   $\text{♜xd3}$  24  $\text{♝xd3}$  e5 25  $\text{♜xa3}$   $\text{♞xd4+}$  26  $\text{♝e2}$  ends up with a clear advantage for White) 22  $\text{♞c2}$   $\text{♙xc3+}$  23  $\text{♞xc3}$ !  $\text{♜xc3}$  24  $\text{♙xc3}$  gives White a much better position once he untangles himself.

### 15 $\text{bxc5}$ $\text{♜xf3+}$ 16 $\text{♝e2}$ $\text{♗f6}$

The main line, but 16... $\text{♗h4}$ !? was sufficient to make a quick draw in one game. 17  $\text{cxb6}$   $\text{♞ad8}$  and now:

a) 18  $\text{♗xd8}$   $\text{♞xd8}$  19  $\text{♝xf3}$   $\text{♗h5+}$  with a perpetual, Callergard-Hellborg, Saltsjöbaden Rilton Cup 1987.

b) 18  $\text{♗a4}$   $\text{♜d4+}$  19  $\text{♝d1}$ ! is the critical test. Black would have to play the right moves all the way to make the draw: 19... $\text{♞xf2}$ ! (19... $\text{♜b3+}$ ? 20  $\text{♝c2}$   $\text{♜xa1+}$  21  $\text{♝b2}$   $\text{♗xa4}$  22  $\text{♜xa4}$   $\text{♞d1}$  23  $\text{bxa7}$  and White wins) 20  $\text{♙xf2}$   $\text{♗xf2}$  21  $\text{♝c1}$   $\text{♗e1+}$  22  $\text{♝b2}$   $\text{♗d2+}$  23  $\text{♝b1}$   $\text{♗e1+}$  24  $\text{♜d1}$  (24  $\text{♗d1}$   $\text{♗xc3}$  25 a4  $\text{♗b4+}$  26  $\text{♝a2}$   $\text{♞f8}$  27  $\text{♙e2}$   $\text{♞f2}$  28  $\text{♞e1}$   $\text{♜xe2}$  29  $\text{♞xe2}$   $\text{♗c4+}$  30  $\text{♝b1}$  and Black has to take the perpetual with 30... $\text{♗b4+}$ , since after 30... $\text{♞xe2}$ ? 31  $\text{♗d8+}$   $\text{♝f7}$  32  $\text{♗c7+}$  White wins; also 24  $\text{♝b2}$   $\text{♗d2+}$  ends with perpetual)

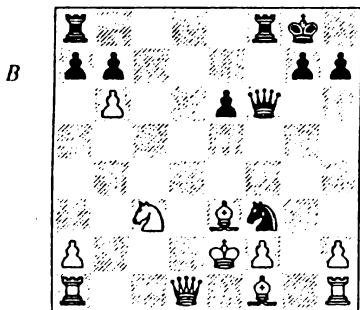
24... ♖c4+ 25 ♜b2 ♗xh1 26 bxa7 ♗xf1 27 ♗xd4 ♗b5+ 28 ♜c2 ♠xd4 29 a8 ♗+ ♜f7 30 ♘c3 ♗d3+ 31 ♜b3 ♗c4+ with a draw.

17 cxb6 (D)

Not 17 ♠c1? ♠ad8 18 ♘e4 ♗b2+ 19 ♗d2 ♗b5+ 20 ♜e3 ♘d5# (0-1) S.Arkeil-Wilson, London Lloyds Bank 1987.

17 ♗g2 is also inferior due to 17... ♘c4! with initiative for Black.

17... ♗xc3!?



This is an interesting move that is worth investigating.

The more standard approach is 17... ♠ad8 18 ♗c2 (18 ♗g2 ♠xd1 19 ♠axd1 ♗xc3 20 ♗xf3 ♗c4+ 21 ♠d3 ♠xf3 22 ♜xf3 ♗xd3 23 bxa7 ♗f5+ 1/2-1/2 Kuijff-Boersma, Dutch Ch 1987) 18... ♘d4+ 19 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 20 ♘e4 ♗xa1 21 ♗g2 ♗c5 22 bxa7 ♗b5+ 23 ♜e3, when 23... ♗a6 24 ♠c1 ♗xa7+ 25 ♜e2 ♗a6+ 26 ♗c4 ♠c8 results in an ending where Black has excellent drawing chances. Instead 23... ♗b6+? 24 ♗c5 ♗a6 25 ♗f1 ♗xa2 26 ♗c4 ♗b2 27 ♠d1! led to a win for White in Tirard-Bilalić, Medellin U-20 Wch 1996.

18 ♗g2

The attempt to refute Black's opening play with 18 ♠c1!? does not give him a big headache if he plays 18... ♗b2+ 19 ♗c2 (19 ♠c2 ♗b5+ 20 ♗d3 ♗h5 is much better for Black) 19... ♘d4+ 20 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 21 f3 (21 ♜e1 ♗b4+! 22 ♜e2 ♗f4 with repetition of moves) 21... ♠xf3! 22 ♜xf3 ♠f8+ 23 ♜e2 (23 ♜g3?? ♗f4+ leads to mate) 23... ♠f2+ 24 ♜e1 ♠xc2 25 ♠xc2 ♗c4+ 26 ♠e2 ♗b4+! (but not 26... ♗xh1?? losing to 27 bxa7 b5 28 ♠g2!) 27 ♜f2 ♗f4+ and Black makes a draw by perpetual check.

18... ♠ad8!

This move gives Black fine play.

Instead 18... ♗c4+? is not good. It's essential to get the remaining forces into play. After 19 ♗d3 ♗g4 20 ♜f1 Black did not have sufficient compensation in Zhuravliov-Gutman, USSR 1972. After 20... axb6 21 h3 ♗h5 22 ♗e2 ♗e5 23 ♠d1 (23 ♗xf3 ♗xa1+ 24 ♜g2 ♗xa2 25 ♗xa2 ♠xa2 26 ♘b1 gives White some advantage) 23... ♘h4, rather than 24 ♠g1?, which left the h2-square open for a black queen invasion, 24 ♗xb7 ♘f5 25 ♜g2 seems to refute the black attack.

19 ♠c1!

White must enter the complications.

19... ♗b2+ 20 ♗c2

20 ♠c2?? fails to 20... ♗b5+!.

20... ♠d2+! 21 ♗xd2!

21 ♗xd2?! ♘d4+ 22 ♜d1 ♘xc2 23 ♠xc2 ♗xb6 leaves the white pieces worse coordinated.

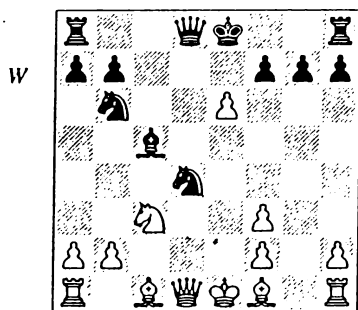
21... ♘d2 22 ♗xd2 ♗xb6 23 f4

The lack of safety for the white king compensates for Black's missing material. If this is a slight advantage to White, or just equal is not so easy to evaluate.

A2)

12...♙c5! (D)

Since White hasn't developed at all, and the position is quite open, it's logical for Black to hurry on with his own development. This is the simple explanation why this is a reasonable pawn sacrifice.



13 exf7+

13 ♙e3 0-0 14 f4 ♘xc6 15 ♖xd8 ♙axd8 16 ♜d1 ♙xd1+ 17 ♜xd1 ♜d8+ 1/2-1/2 Bichsel-Neuenschwander, Swiss Cht 1995 is not a problem for Black.

13 ♙b5+ ♜f8 14 ♙e3 ♘xc6 with a slight advantage for Black – Shirov.

13...♜xf7 14 ♙e3 ♞e8 15 ♙d3

15 ♙e2 ♗h4 16 ♘e4 ♞xe4 17 fxe4 ♗xe4 18 0-0 ♘xc2+ 19 ♗xe2 ♗g6+ 20 ♜h1 ♗e4+ with perpetual, as suggested independently by Shirov and Hiarc.

15...♗h4 16 ♘e4

16 ♙e4 ♜ad8 17 0-0 ♘e6! followed by ...♙d6 gives Black the better chances.

16...♜ad8 17 ♙xd4

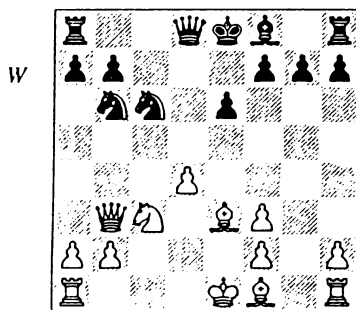
17 0-0 ♙d6 18 ♘xd6+ ♞xd6 19 ♙xd4 ♞xd4 20 ♗b3+ is White's best try for an advantage.

17...♞xd4 18 0-0 ♙d6 19 ♗b3+ ♜f8 20 ♘xd6 ♞xd6

Compared to 17 0-0 the black rook is placed better for both attack and defence. Black has sufficient compensation for the pawn, Greenfeld-Shirov, Budapest 1996.

B)

10 ♙e3 e6 (D)



Now:

B1: 11 ♞g1 47  
B2: 11 0-0-0 48

Instead 11 ♜d1 ♙b4 12 a3 ♙a5 13 ♙d3 ♞c8 14 ♞g1 0-0 15 ♜f1 ♙xc3 16 bxc3 g6 17 ♙h6 ♞e8 18 ♞g5 was the game Marin-Magem, Berga 1995. Now Black could have obtained the better position with 18...♗c7 19 ♜g1 ♘d5, as suggested by Magem.

B1)

11 ♞g1

This move has been the main line over the last few years. White tries to trouble Black's development, and at the same time activate his rook. If this is better or worse than 11 0-0-0 is hard to say.

11...g6

Or:

a) 11...♙b4 12 ♖xg7 ♘d5 13 0-0-0 ♜c8 14 ♚b1 ♙xc3 15 bxc3 a6 16 ♜c1 ♘a5 17 ♜a3 b5 18 ♚a1 with insufficient compensation, Rech-Heinemann, Delmenhorst 1987.

b) 11...♜d6 12 0-0-0-0-0 13 ♘b5! (threatening 14 ♘xa7+!) 13...♜b4 14 ♜xb4 ♙xb4 15 ♖xg7 was a pawn up for insufficient compensation in Rech-Molinarioli, Dortmund 1987.

c) 11...♙e7 has been tried, but the critical test 12 ♖xg7 is not OK for Black:

c1) 12...♘xd4 13 ♙b5+! ♘xb5 (13...♚f8 14 ♙h6 with an irresistible attack) 14 ♜xb5+ ♜d7 15 ♜d1 with initiative.

c2) 12...♙f6 13 ♖g4 and Black can't take on d4: 13...♙xd4 14 0-0-0 c5 15 ♙b5 with a huge initiative.

12 0-0-0 ♙e7 13 d5

13 ♙h6 ♜c7 14 ♙h3 ♙f6 15 ♘b5 ♜e7 16 ♚b1 ♘d5 is no worse for Black, Al Modiahki-Nascimento, Moscow OL 1994.

13...exd5 14 ♘xd5 ♘xd5 15 ♖xd5 ♜c7 16 ♚b1 0-0 17 f4 ♜ad8 18 ♙g2 ♙f6

18...♖xd5?! is suspect, e.g. 19 ♙xd5 ♜d7 20 ♙e4 ♜d8 21 f5 ♚g7 22 fxg6 hxg6 23 ♙h6+ ♚xh6 24 ♜xf7 ♜d1+ 25 ♖xd1 ♖xd1+ 26 ♚c2 ♜d6 27 f4 ♖f6 28 ♜g8 ♚h5 29 ♙f3+ 1-0 Koch-Hauchard, Narbonne 1997.

19 ♜c1 ♖xd5 20 ♜xd5

20 ♙xd5!?, to attack both c6 and f7 directly must be better. Now Black can't reach the same defence as before: 20...♜d8 21 ♜c4 ♜d6 22 ♙c5! (22 ♙xa7? directly is a mistake, as after 22...♜d7 23 ♙xc6 ♖xc6 24 ♜b3 ♜f5+ 25 ♜c2 ♖xc2 26 ♜xc2 ♜xf4 27 ♜c8+ ♚g7 28 ♜xb7 ♜xh2 Black is

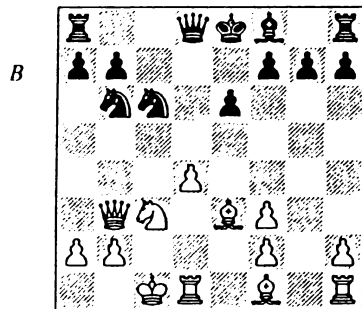
slightly better; his safer king makes it easier to push the h-pawn) 22...♜d8 23 ♙xa7 and White is a pawn up for seemingly nothing.

20...♜d8 21 ♜b5 a6 22 ♜a4 ♜d6

Lautier-Illescas, Ubeda 1997. Black is solid, and the game soon ended in a draw – see p. 42.

B2)

11 0-0-0 (D)



11...♙e7

Or:

a) 11...♙b4 12 d5 exd5 13 ♘xd5 ♘xd5 14 ♖xd5 ♜c7 15 ♚b1 0-0 16 f4 ♖fd8 17 ♙g2 1/2-1/2 Grund-Lauber, Hungary 1997. In my opinion the bishop is worse on b4 than e7, and White has good chances to gain an advantage here.

b) 11...♜c7 12 ♚b1 ♙e7 and now White should now transpose to the main line with 13 d5 ♘xd5 14 ♘xd5 exd5 15 ♖xd5. Black has the option of a quick ...♜d8, but it's not obvious that this should be an improvement. Instead, 13 ♖g1 ♙f6 14 ♙h3 ♘e7 15 ♘b5 ♜d7 16 d5 ♘bxd5 17 ♙g5 a5 18 ♙xf6 gxh6 19 ♘c3 ♘xc3+ 20 ♜xc3 ♘d5 21 ♜b3 0-0-0 didn't give White

sufficient compensation in Atkinson-Menghi, Arnhem U-20 Ech 1989.

c) 11...♖c8 12 ♖b1 ♘e7 (12...♗c7? 13 ♖b5 ♗b8 14 ♖xa7!) 13 d5 ♖xd5 14 ♖xd5 exd5 15 ♘h3! 0-0 16 ♘xc8 ♗xc8 17 ♠xd5 gives White a winning position he managed to lose in Pogats-Kasa, Hungary 1991.

12 d5

12 ♠g1 (this makes little sense now compared to move 11) 12...0-0 and now:

a) 13 d5? is an unwise opening of position after the tempo-loss. White is punished after 13...♖xd5 14 ♖xd5 exd5 15 ♠xd5 ♗c7 16 ♗c3 (16 ♖b1 ♗xh2 17 ♠g3 ♠ad8 leaves Black on top as well) 16...♘f6 17 ♗c4 ♠fd8 18 ♠h5 g6 19 f4 and now, rather than 19...♘d4 with a better game for Black, Ehilvest-Oll, Riga 1995, 19...♠ac8! with a winning position was even stronger.

b) 13 ♖e4 ♖h8 14 ♖b1 ♖d5 15 ♘d3 ♖a5 16 ♗a4 ♖b4 17 a3 ♖xd3 18 ♠xd3 b5! with a strong attack in Krockenberger-Frick, Württemberg Cht 1994.

c) 13 ♖b1 ♖d5 14 ♖xd5 ♗xd5 15 ♗xd5 exd5 16 ♘b5 ♠ac8 17 ♠c1 f5 18 ♘xc6 bxc6 19 ♘f4 ♘f6 20 ♘e5 ♘xe5 21 dxe5 with total equality, Lagunov-Hermann, 2nd Bundesliga 1994/5.

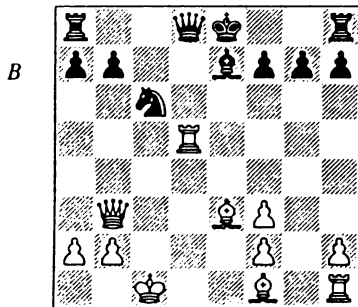
12...♖xd5

12...exd5 13 ♘xb6?! ♗xb6 14 ♗xb6 axb6 15 ♖xd5 0-0 16 ♖b1 ♘c5 is totally level.

13 ♖xd5 exd5 14 ♠xd5 (D)

14 ♗xd5 0-0 15 ♗f5 ♗c8 16 ♗xc8 ♠xc8 17 ♘h3 ♠cd8 18 ♠xd8 ♠xd8 19 ♠d1 ♠xd1+ 20 ♖xd1 is a way of obtaining a draw, if that's what you want. Without any obvious black weaknesses, it's not right to claim any white

advantage just because he has the two bishops, Nordsieck-Kemna, NRW-Liga 1989/90.

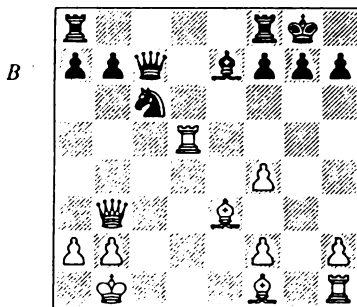


14...♗c7

14...♗c8!? provides the queen with more future squares, but at the same time it limits the options of the rooks, and therefore forces Black to move his queen again soon. After 15 ♖b1 0-0 16 a3 ♗e6, Ahmels-Kordsachia, Bundesliga 1981/2, White should try 17 ♠g1, 17 ♘c4 or 17 ♖a2!?

15 ♖b1 0-0 16 f4!

After 16 ♘g2?! ♖b4 17 ♠d4 ♗c6! 18 ♠g4, 18...♠fd8 1/2-1/2 was Kraut-Schlemermeyer, Bundesliga 1990/1, but 18...a5! with equality seems even simpler.



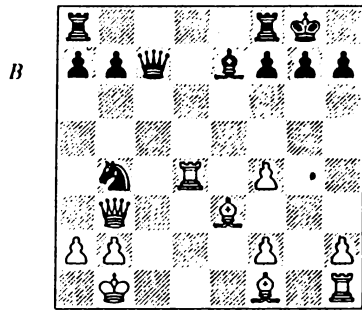
## 16...♖b4

16...♖ad8 might be better, when 17 ♖g2 ♜xd5 18 ♗xd5 ♜d7!? (rather than 18...♗d6 19 ♜c4, which gives White a small plus) is very interesting. When I faced it at the board, and for a long time thereafter, I felt that it wasn't a very good move. Only when working on this book did I find an improvement for Black, which holds the position: 19 ♜d1! (19 a3 ♜f5+ 20 ♖a2 ♜d8 21 ♗xc6 bxc6 22 ♗xa7 ♜xf4 is level) 19...♜f5+ 20 ♜c2 ♜xc2+ 21 ♖xc2 and now:

a) 21...♖b4+? 22 ♖b3 ♜d8!? (after 22...♖xd5 White gains material by 23 ♜xd5 followed by 24 ♜d7) 23 ♗f3! (23 ♗xf7+? ♖xf7 24 ♜xd8 ♗xd8 25 ♖xb4 a6 26 ♖c5 ♗c7 and Black holds the draw) 23...♜xd1 24 ♗xd1 a6 25 ♗f3 b5 26 ♗e4! (now the knight is in trouble) 26...a5 27 a4! (this creates a second weakness on a5 – the poor position of the king is the first weakness – and leaves Black in a lost position) 27...♖a6!? 28 axb5 ♖c5+ 29 ♖c4!! (29 ♗xc5 is, surprisingly, only a draw) 29...♖xe4 30 ♖d5 ♖d6 31 ♗c5 ♖xb5 32 ♗xe7 and the active king decided matters in Aagaard–Ej-Kher, Copenhagen (1) 1996.

b) 21...♜c8! 22 ♗xc6 ♜xc6+ 23 ♖b3 ♜d6 still gives Black reasonable chances of defending.

17 ♜d4! (D)



## 17...♖c6

17...a5! is a serious improvement. Black should not give up the control of the light squares so easily. However, the move seriously weakens the b6-square, so Black is still some way from achieving equality.

## 18 ♜d1 ♗f6

This looks active, but the attack on b2 is unassisted, and therefore not very effective.

19 ♗g2 ♜fd8 20 ♗e4 ♜xd1+ 21 ♜xd1 ♜d8? 22 ♜xd8+ ♗xd8 23 ♜d3  
Winning a pawn.

23...h5 24 ♗xc6 bxc6 25 ♗xa7 ♜xa7?!

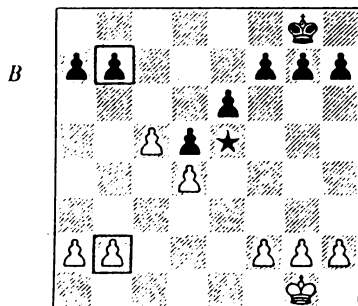
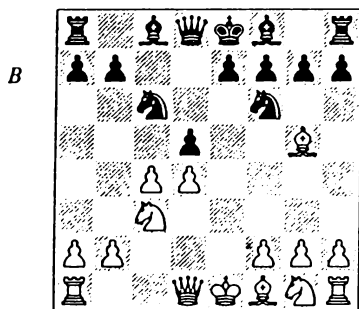
Exchanging the bishops doesn't help Black.

26 ♜xd8+ ♖h7 27 ♜d3+ g6 28 ♜e3

White has a winning queen ending, which he transformed into a full point in Anand–Karolyi, Frunze 1987.

# 3 6 ♖g5

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♟f6  
5 ♟c3 ♟c6 6 ♜g5 (D)



Whereas 6 ♟f3 strives for an endgame plus, with this line White seeks complications and a sharp middle-game. For this reason it attracts a lot of players. Personally I believe 6 ♟f3 poses more problems for Black, but such factors as style and personality should be taken into account when one chooses a repertoire. 6 ♜g5 requires more theoretical knowledge, and also leads to more entertaining positions than the endgame after 6 ♟f3.

The traditional main line continues with 6...c6, when there are a lot of different possibilities. Often the pawn-structure ends up like this (D):

Often the b-pawns are exchanged, but sometimes not. White is generally better in this structure, since he has more space, and can use the e5-square for his cavalry to point its gun at various places, such as f7 and c6. Also the

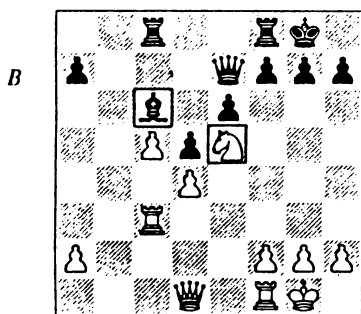
more space makes it easier for him to enter the b-file and somehow to profit from his pressure on the e-file.

Black would normally be happy to break in the centre with ...e6-e5, but this is not always possible, so sometimes he has to attack the white pawn-chain at its head with ...b6. Sometimes White answers b4, and sometimes he has to give in and play cxb6. If this happens Black is normally equal, but of course other influences play a part as well.

The difficulties in this structure for Black have led to him trying a lot of other ideas on move 6. The best of these, 6...♟e6, is investigated in the next chapter, while the rest can be found in the theoretical section.

In the position in the following diagram, White has achieved almost everything he could hope for.

White has a significant advantage due to his better structure. Also his



Hort – Mestel  
London 1982

knight is a lot better than the black bishop. That is why Black decides to weaken his structure to get rid of the white knight.

17...f6 18 Qxc6 Rxc6 19 Re1

The e6-pawn is put under pressure at once. This move also stops ...c6-e5 breaking up White's structure.

19...Rb8 20 Wa4!

Taking advantage of the weaknesses in the black position. White now manoeuvres around until Black is incapable of protecting his weaknesses any more.

20...Rbc8 21 f4

Preventing ...e5 for a long time.

21...Wb7 22 Rb3 Wc7 23 Rf3 Wb7  
24 Rb3 Wc7 25 Rf3 Wb7 26 Wd1

Of course White is not interested in a draw. Now the cannons are aimed at e6, as there is always the f4-f5 break for Black to worry about. Therefore Black should now play 26...f5, with good chances of holding the position.

26...Ra6? 27 Rfe3 Wd7 28 We2 Ra4

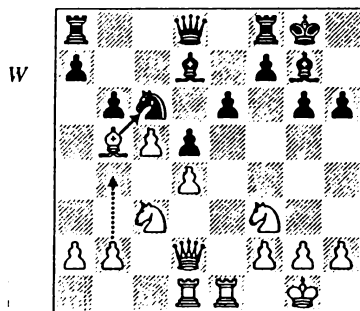
Black realizes that passive defence is useless, but the text-move is also not good enough.

29 Rxe6 Rxd4 30 c6 Wf7 31 Re8+  
Rxe8 32 Wxe8+ Wf8 33 Wxf8+1-0

White wins after 33...Qxf8 34 Rcl!

This was a very clear-cut example of how White would like things to go. Although he was a strong player, Black was made to look like a patzer. This was what the position did to him.

In the following example Black has kept both his bishops, but as we shall see, the knights are not inferior to the bishop-pair in this kind of position.



Ehlvest – Granda  
Erevan OL 1996

White is better on account of the pawn-structure and his superior development. But still he has to keep a grip on the position.

15 Qxc6! Qxc6 16 b4

This is a standard reaction, which secures the structure under examination.

16...bxc5 17 bxc5 Rb8 18 Qe5  
Qe8 19 f4 f6 20 Qd3

Black is in deep trouble here. He cannot find any play for his bishops, so he tries to open up the kingside. In

the meantime White takes over the b-file.

20...♖f7 21 ♖b1 g5 22 ♖xb8 ♗xb8  
23 ♖b1 ♗c8 24 ♖b5

The knight comes around and is clearly worth more than either of the black bishops.

24...♖g6 25 ♖d6 ♗a6 26 ♖b4  
♗a5 27 f5!

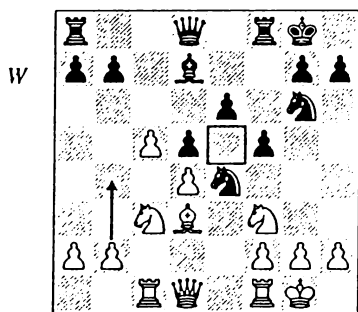
Breaking up the black structure and closing in the bishops.

27...exf5 28 ♖b2 ♖d8?

An understandable mistake, but he was under a lot of pressure, and, with 29 ♖xd5 coming, in very poor shape.

29 ♖b7 1-0

In the following game Black tries another, less efficient, strategy.



Shamkovich - Commons  
USA 1978

In this game Black has chosen a Stonewall structure, and given White free play on the queenside. This strategy was also employed in Botvinnik-Kmoch, which can be found on page 60. In the present game White decides to grab space on the queenside.

14 b4 a6 15 ♖e1 ♖f4 16 ♖f1 ♖e8

This is a bad bishop, and Black naturally decides to try to get it into play. However, while this plan is very simple, it is also easy to prevent.

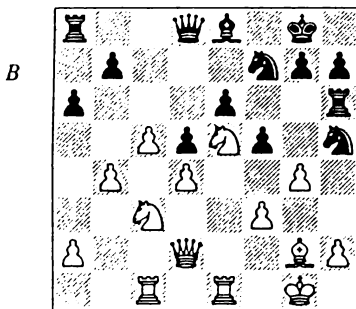
17 g3 ♖h5 18 ♖e5

White possesses a very large advantage. Black has no counterplay, and White has plenty of ways to improve his position.

18...♖f6 19 ♖g2 ♖h6

This attack is doomed to fail.

20 f3 ♖g5 21 ♗d2 ♖f7 22 g4! (D)



Winning a piece. The mere threat of advancing on the queenside made Black lose all by himself.

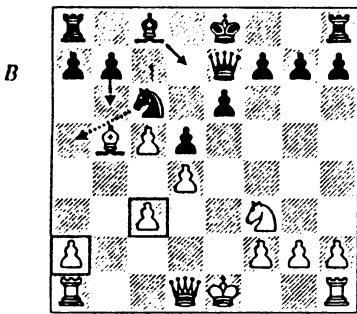
22...♗h4 23 ♖xf7 ♖xf7 24 gxf5  
♖xh5 25 h3

Over and out.

25...♖g5 26 ♖e2 h6 27 ♗f4 1-0

This looked very easy, but Black chose a very bad plan. Things did not improve either when he tried to start an attack, instead of finding some way to defend.

In the following position Black has managed to exchange knights on c3 in a position where White had to recapture with the pawn, and thereby wreck his own structure.



**Efimov – Prié**  
*Corsica rpd 1997*

Black's strategy in this game is interesting. If he gets this kind of position, and then is able to play the manoeuvre we see here, then White is drifting towards an inferior position.

11...♖d7 12 0-0 0-0 13 ♖e1 ♖a5

Black has already equalized. If White exchanges bishops, then Black will easily get counterplay on the queen-side with the break ...b6, but if not, then the counterplay comes immediately. So White has no good options. He decides to keep the bishops on, which is very understandable.

14 ♖d3 b6!

Opening files towards c3 and a2, which are weaker than b6 will ever be.

15 cxb6 axb6 16 ♖e5 ♖fc8 17 ♖e3

White is hoping to start an attack, but too many pieces have been exchanged, so Black easily takes care of the threats.

17...g6 18 ♖b1 ♖c6 19 ♖g4?

This loses. After the continuation 19 ♖xd7 ♗xd7 20 ♗b3 (20 ♖xb6?! ♖xa2 21 ♖b5? ♗a7! wins for Black) 20...♖cb8 21 ♖ee1 the position is more or less equal, although Black's

play is easier, and White will need to defend.

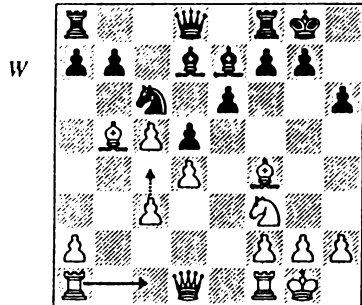
19...h5!

Winning a pawn. The safety of the king is not really endangered.

20 ♖e5 ♖xe5 21 dxe5 ♖xc3 22 h3 ♖xa2 23 ♖xb6 ♗h4

Black went on to win.

Of course there are also examples with this structure where White is doing well, but they are outnumbered. Still, this is an important game:



**Kasparov – Anand**  
*Amsterdam 1996*

This position has a certain resemblance to the previous game. Black is about to play ...b7-b6, after which he would be equal. Kasparov gives 13 ♖e1 b6 14 ♖a6 ♖c8 as equal, probably with the idea of 15 ♖b5 ♖d7 with repetition. Instead he finds a move he himself was extremely proud of.

13 ♖c1!! ♖e8!

If Black goes for 13...b6 anyway, he will be met with a surprise: 14 c4! opens the centre, when White is much better developed. Moreover, Black cannot then latch onto any weaknesses in

the white camp. White is better after 14...dxc4 15 ♜xc4 since Black must avoid the clearly inferior endgame after 15...bxc5 16 dxc5 ♜xc5 17 ♙b5 ♚e7 18 ♚c2 ♘d4 19 ♚xc5 ♚xc5 20 ♜xc5 ♙xb5 (20...♘xb5? 21 a4 ♘a3 22 ♜c3) 21 ♘xd4 ♙xf1 22 ♚xf1.

14 ♜e1 ♙f6 15 ♜b1

Here Kasparov thinks White should have played 15 ♙d3 b6 16 cxb6 axb6 17 ♙b1, when his possibilities of starting an attack are more important than the weaknesses on the queenside. Note that had Black not played ...h6 he could defend everything quite easily with ...g6, but now it is more difficult.

15...b6 16 ♙a6 ♙c8 17 ♙b5 ♙d7 18 ♙a6 ♙c8 19 ♙d3!?

White decides to sacrifice a pawn and go for the attack.

19...bxc5 20 ♘e5 ♙d7?

20...♘xe5? loses directly to 21 dxe5 ♙g5 (21...♙e7 22 ♚h5 gives White a winning attack) 22 ♙xg5 hxg5 (22...♚xg5 23 ♙b5 ♜d8 24 ♙c6 wins material) 23 ♚h5, when Black has no sufficient defence. One line given by Kasparov is 23...g6 24 ♙xg6 fxc6 25 ♚xg6+ ♚f8 26 ♜e3 g4 27 ♚xg4.

Instead Black should have played 20...♙xe5 21 dxe5 f5! 22 ♜e3, after which White has compensation for the sacrificed material, but the consequences are far from clear.

21 ♜b7 ♙xe5 22 dxe5 ♜b8

22...♙c8 would lose to 23 ♚g4! ♚f8 (23...♙xb7 24 ♙xh6 g6 25 ♙xg6 ♚h8 26 ♙xf7 ♜g8 27 ♚h5) 24 ♙xh6 gxh6 25 ♜xf7+ ♚xf7 26 ♚g6+ with mate to follow.

23 ♜xb8 ♚xb8 24 ♚g4 ♚f8 25 ♜e3

It is a pure pleasure to see how, in simple fashion, Kasparov makes his pieces work. Black is incapable of defending g7.

25...♚d8

Kasparov gives the beautiful winning line 25...♚b2 26 h4! c4 27 ♜g3 g5 28 hxg5! cxd3 29 gxh6 ♙c8 30 ♚h4 d2 31 h7 d1 ♚+ 32 ♚h2, when the two queens do not help Black at all.

26 h4 ♚a5 27 ♜g3 ♚e7 28 ♚xg7 ♚d8 29 ♚xf7

White's attack has broken through. Although the black king has escaped for the moment, it will soon meet its fate.

29...♚xc3 30 ♙b5 ♚a5 31 ♜g7?!

Kasparov thinks that he missed an easier win with 31 ♙xc6! ♙xc6 32 ♙xh6 d4 33 h5 c4 34 ♙g5+ ♚c8 35 h6 d3 36 h7 d2 37 ♙xd2 ♚xd2 38 ♚xe8+.

31...♘e7 32 ♙xd7 ♚xd7 33 ♚f6! d4?!

This lets White go into an easily winning pawn endgame, but White also wins after the superior 33...c4: 34 ♙xh6 c3 35 ♙g5 ♚c5 36 h5 c2 37 ♚f4 ♚c8 38 h6 ♘f5 39 ♜f7 ♘d4 40 ♚h2! and the white h-pawn is clearly superior to the black c-pawn.

34 ♙xh6 c4 35 ♙g5 ♚c5 36 ♜xe7+ 1-0

After the mass exchange White brings his king to the queenside, and his three pawns on the kingside decide.

## The Theory of 6 ♖g5

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 ♘c6 6 ♙g5

Here there are a large number of possibilities:

- A: 6...dxc4 56  
 B: 6...♖a5?! 57  
 C: 6...♖b6?! 57  
 D: 6...♗g4?! 58  
 E: 6...♜e4?! 59  
 F: 6...e6 59

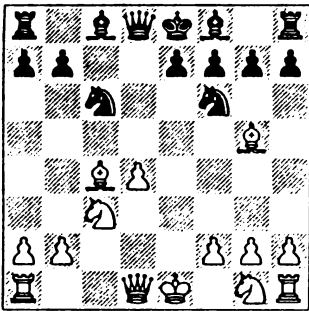
Note that 6...♗c6 is discussed in the next chapter.

A)

6...dxc4 7 ♗xc4! (D)

7 d5 is often played, but the text is the sharpest and probably also the best.

B



7...♖xd4

7...e6 8 ♜f3 ♗e7 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♖e1 b6 11 a3 ♗b7 12 ♖d3 leaves White with a traditional isolated queen's pawn position, where he has good chances to gain an advantage. See the introduction chapter.

7...♜xd4?! is very risky because of 8 ♜f3! ♜xf3+ 9 ♖xf3, when White has strong development for his sacrificed pawn, e.g. 9...♖c7 10 ♗b5+ ♗d7 11 0-0 ♗xb5 12 ♜xb5 ♖b6 13 a4 a6 14 ♗e3 ♖d8 15 ♖fd1 ♜d7 16 ♖xb7! axb5 17 ♖xd7 ♖c8 18 a5 (the advance

of this pawn is decisive) 18...b4 19 a6 ♖xb7 20 ♖xb7 e5 21 a7 ♗d6 22 ♖a6 1-0 Gipslis-Schulze, Biel 1995.

8 ♖xd4 ♜xd4 9 0-0-0 e5

9...♜e6!?! is an alternative, but White is reckoned to have the better chances after 10 ♗xf6 exf6 11 ♗b5+ ♜e7 12 ♜f3!.

10 f4!

10 ♜f3?! surrenders the initiative: 10...♜xf3 11 gxf3 ♗e6! 12 ♗b5+ ♜d7 13 f4 f6 14 ♗h4 0-0-0 15 fxe5 ♜xe5 16 ♖xd8+ ♜xd8 17 ♖e1 ♗d6 and White has only just enough compensation, Lanka-Preissmann, Geneva 1993.

10...♗g4

10...♗c5 11 fxe5 ♜g4 12 ♜f3 ♜c6 13 ♖he1 ensures White a big plus, Paronlek-Lundquist, corr. 1970. 14 ♜e4 is coming, and it is not apparent what Black should do.

11 ♜f3 ♗xf3

Gipslis gives the line 11...♜xf3! 12 gxf3 ♗xf3 13 fxe5 ♗xh1 14 exf6 with the evaluation that White has compensation. I have tried to analyse a possible continuation, and have come to the conclusion that White has enough for a draw, but that might be all: 14...h6! 15 ♖e1+ ♜d7 16 ♖d1+ ♜c8 17 ♖d8+! ♜c7 18 ♜b5+ ♜b6 19 fxg7 ♗xg7 20 ♗e3+ ♜a5 21 ♖d6 ♗c6 22 ♜xa7 with equal chances, though nothing is clear yet.

12 gxf3 0-0-0!

12...♖c8?! 13 fxe5 ♖xc4 14 exf6 g6 15 ♖he1+ ♜e6 16 ♜b1 ♖c6 17 ♜d5 ♗d6 was S.B.Hansen-P.H.Nielsen, Copenhagen 1996. Now 18 ♖e2! would have been very strong, when Black is verging on lost.

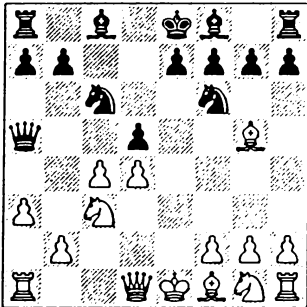
13 fxe5 ♜xf3 14 ♖xd8+ ♜xd8 15 ♖d1+ ♜c8

Now 16 exf6?! led quickly to a draw in Stein-Speckner, Dortmund 1993. Instead 16 ♖xf6! gxf6 17 exf6 would ensure White a significant advantage due to the attack on f7 and the future possibilities of the white f-pawn.

**B)**

6... ♖a5?! 7 a3 (D)

White cannot win a pawn due to the drawing sequence 7 ♖xf6 exf6 8 cxd5 ♖b4! 9 dxc6 ♖xc3+ 10 bxc3 ♖xc3+ 11 ♖e2 0-0 12 f3 ♖e8+ 13 ♖f2 ♖e3+ 14 ♖g3 ♖g5+ 15 ♖f2 ♖e3+. This is of course not completely forced, but anyway good enough for equality for Black.



Now:

B1: 7...dxc4 57

B2: 7...♖e4 57

**B1)**

7...dxc4 8 d5 ♖e5 9 ♖d4 ♖d3+ 9...h6!? 10 ♖f4 ♖g6 11 ♖g3 is suggested by Lanka, giving White a big plus.

10 ♖xd3 cxd3 11 ♖f3 ♖f5

11...d2+ 12 ♖xd2 ♖a6 13 ♖c4 b5 14 ♖e5 ♖d7 15 ♖d3 f6 16 ♖c3 ♖f7

17 0-0 is completely awful for Black, Liss-Metz, Budapest 1995.

12 0-0 ♖d8 13 ♖h4 ♖d7 14 ♖fe1

White has an overwhelming advantage. Black has no easy way to get his king into safety.

14... ♖b6 15 ♖xd3 ♖c6 16 ♖xf6 gxf6 17 ♖f3 ♖d7 18 ♖e4 ♖g7 19 d6!

Cracking open the black pawn-structure, and thereby deciding the game, Lanka-Fridman, Vilnius 1993.

**B2)**

7...♖e4 8 ♖d2!

8 b4? has been suggested, claiming to give White a clear advantage after 8...dxc3 9 ♖c1 ♖a2 10 ♖b2 but all I see is misery: 10...♖axb4 11 axb4 ♖xb4+ 12 ♖xb4 ♖xb4 13 ♖c1 ♖e6!.

8...♖xd2 9 ♖xd2 dxc4 10 ♖xc4 e6 11 ♖f3 ♖e7 12 0-0 0-0 13 b4 ♖h5 14 ♖e4 ♖d8 15 ♖fe1 b6 16 ♖g3 ♖g4 17 ♖e4 ♖g6 18 ♖ae1

White has complete control over the position, and went on to win in Lanka-Guliev, Cappelle la Grande 1997.

**C)**

6... ♖b6?! 7 cxd5 ♖xd4!

7... ♖xb2? is a classic mistake, leading directly to disaster: 8 ♖c1! ♖b4 9 ♖a4 ♖xa2 10 ♖c4 ♖g4 11 ♖f3 ♖xf3 12 gxf3 1-0 Botvinnik-Spielmann, Moscow 1935.

7...♖xd5?! also leads to a terrible position after the continuation 8 ♖xd5 ♖a5+ 9 ♖c3 ♖xg5 10 ♖f3 ♖h5 11 d5 ♖e5 12 ♖b5+ ♖d8 13 ♖e2 with an overwhelming advantage for White, Borge-Greger, Denmark 1997.

8 ♖e3

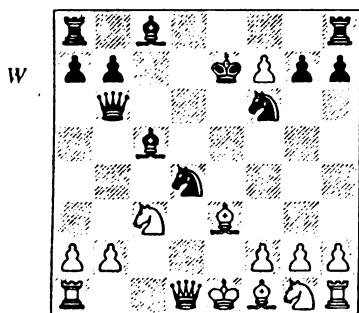
8 ♖f3 ♖f5 9 ♖xf6 exf6 10 ♖b5+ ♖d8 11 0-0 ♖d6 12 ♖e2 ♖d7 gives

rise to an interesting game with chances for both players, Heppkeausen-Kurr, NRW-Liga 1991/2.

8...e5 9 dx6 ♖c5

This is the idea, but perhaps it is too optimistic. According to my analysis White gains the advantage.

10 exf7+ ♜e7 (D)



Now:

C1: 11 ♖c4!? 58

C2: 11 ♖d3! 58

C1)

11 ♖c4!? ♜d8 12 ♘f3 ♖g4 13 ♖xd4 ♜xd4 14 ♜e2+ ♜f8 15 ♖b3 a5 16 0-0 a4 17 ♖c4 ♖xf3 18 gxf3 ♜h4

Now, rather than 19 ♘e4? ♘xe4 20 fxe4 ♜d6 21 e5 ♜d4 22 ♖e6 ♜f4 23 h3 ♜a6! (all the pieces are involved in the attack) 24 ♖g4 ♜g3+ 0-1 Rothgen-Gelenczei, corr. 1967, White should play 19 ♘b5! ♖d6 20 ♜fe1 ♖hx2+ 21 ♜f1, when White is better, although matters are still rather unclear.

C2)

11 ♖d3!

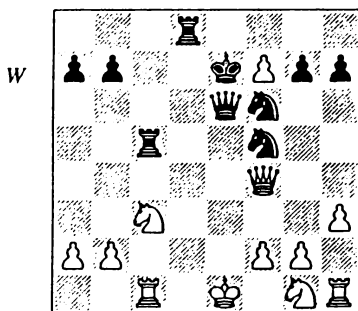
This is probably the right move. White blocks the d-file.

11...♜d8 12 ♜c1 ♖g4!? 13 ♜d2?!

White should return the material with an advantage by 13 ♘a4! ♖xd1 (13...♜a5+ 14 ♜d2 is clearly better for White) 14 ♘xb6 axb6 15 ♜xd1 ♜xa2 16 ♜b1 and even though Black still has some activity, White's lasting advantages should give him the better game.

13...♜ac8 14 h3 ♖f5 15 ♖xf5 ♘xf5 16 ♖xc5+ ♜xc5 17 ♜f4 ♜e6+? (D).

17...♜xb2 18 ♘ge2 ♘d4! restores the material balance, and levels the chances. One idea is the trick 19 ♜b1? ♜xb1+! 20 ♘xb1 ♘c2+ and Black mates.



18 ♘ge2 ♜c4 19 ♜f3 ♘d4

Now instead of 20 ♜xb7+? ♜d7 21 ♜b8 ♜xf7 22 0-0?! (22 ♜f1 is a better attempt, even though it is difficult to see White's future prospects after 22...♘xe2 23 ♜e1 ♜xc3 24 bxc3 ♜d2) 22...♘xe2+ with a winning position for Black, Schubert-Pasman, Groningen 1977, White can refute the black attack and gain an edge with 20 ♜e3!.

D)

6...♖g4?!

This has been known to be bad for a very long time.

7 ♖e2 ♖xe2 8 ♜gxc2 dxc4 9 d5 ♜e5 10 0-0 h6 11 ♜f4 ♜g6 12 ♖a4+ ♖d7 13 ♖xc4 ♜c8 14 ♖b3 e5 15 dxe6 ♖xe6 16 ♖xb7 ♖c5 17 ♜d4 ♖xd4 18 ♜ae1

White has a very large advantage, Tal-Bronstein, USSR Ch (Leningrad) 1971.

E)

6...♜e4?!

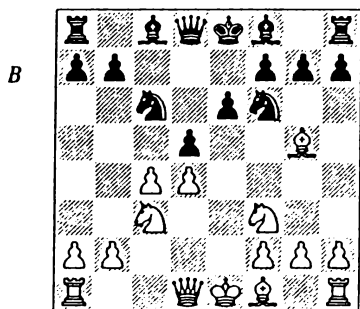
This breaks a lot of general opening principles, and White also gets a lot of free play.

7 ♜xe4 dxe4 8 d5 ♜e5 9 ♖d4 h6 10 ♖e3 ♜g4 11 ♖xe4 ♖a5+ 12 ♖d2 ♖b6 13 ♜h3 ♖xb2 14 ♜b1 ♖f6 15 c5

White has by far the better position, Smirnov-Burlak, Moscow 1995.

F)

6...e6 7 ♜f3 (D)



7...♖e7

7...dxc4 8 ♖xc4 ♖e7 9 0-0 0-0 10 a3 a6 11 ♖a2 b5 12 ♖d3 ♖b7 13 ♜ad1 gives White a traditional slight advantage, with possibilities of attack against the king.

8 c5 0-0

Or:

a) 8...h6?! 9 ♖f4! ♜e4 10 ♖b5 ♜xc3 11 bxc3 ♖d7 12 0-0 0-0 13 ♜c1! ♜e8 (13...b6 14 c4! poses Black serious problems on the c-file) 14 ♜e1 ♖f6 15 ♖d3 (15 ♜b1 was Kasparov-Anand, Amsterdam 1996 – see page 54) 15...b6 16 cxb6 axb6 17 ♖b1 with an advantage for White according to Kasparov.

b) 8...b6?! 9 ♖b5 ♖d7 10 ♖xc6! gives White a slight advantage after 10...♖xc6 11 b4 bxc5 12 ♜e5 ♖c7 13 bxc5 0-0 14 0-0.

c) 8...♜e4 9 ♖xe7 ♖xe7 (9...♜xc3 10 ♖xd8 ♜xd1 11 ♜xd1 ♖xd8 12 ♖b5 ♖d7 13 0-0 gives White a slight but significant edge, Dueball-Pieper Emden, NRW-Liga 1994/5) 10 ♖d3 ♜b4! (probably bad for Black is 10...f5 11 ♖e3 0-0 12 ♖b5 ♜b4 13 ♜c1 ♖d7 14 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 15 ♜e5 ♖e7 16 0-0 ♜c6 17 ♜xc6 bxc6 18 f3 f4 19 ♖e2 ♜g5 20 ♜fe1 Rogers-Kuijff, Wijk aan Zee 1993) 11 ♖b5+ ♜c6 12 ♜xe4 dxe4 13 ♜e5 ♖c7 (13...0-0!? Gelfand) 14 0-0-0-0-0 (14...♖d7 15 ♜xd7 ♖xd7 16 ♖e2 f5 is suggested to give equality by Gelfand, but I think White might be better due to the advantage of having a bishop against a knight) 15 ♜xc6 bxc6 16 ♖e2 ♖a5 17 a3 f5 18 f3 and even though matters are unclear, White should possess an edge, despite Black's chances of gaining counterplay on the b-file, Gelfand-Kuczynski, Moscow OL 1994.

9 ♖b5

9 ♜c1!? might actually prove to be better:

a) 9...b6 10 ♖b5 ♖d7 11 ♖xc6 ♖xc6 12 b4 bxc5 13 ♜e5 ♜c8 14 bxc5 gives White an advantage, Hort-Mestel, London 1982.

b) 9...♖c4 10 ♕xc7 ♜xc7 11 ♕c2 and now:

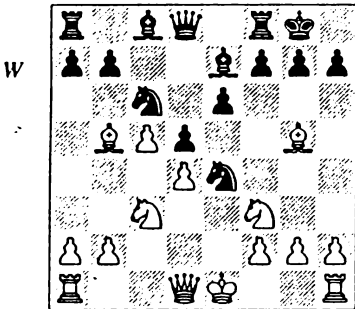
b1) 11...♖xc3?! 12 ♜xc3 e5 13 ♖xc5! ♖xe5 14 ♜e3 gives White the better chances after 14...♜g5 15 ♜xc5 ♜xg2 16 ♕f3 ♜g6 17 h4! ♕d7!? 18 h5 ♜a6! 19 h6!, Stohl-Ye Rongguang, Novi Sad OL 1990.

b2) 11...♜d8! (overprotecting d5 to liberate the position with ...e6-e5) 12 0-0 e5 13 dxe5 (an improvement over 13 ♖xe5, Liberzon-A.Zaitsev, USSR Ch (Alma-Ata) 1968) and then:

b211) 13...♖xe5? gives White a big plus after the queen sacrifice 14 ♖xd5! ♜e6 15 ♖c7 ♜xd1 16 ♜fxd1 ♜f6 17 ♖xa8 even though there is still a lot to play for.

b212) White is slightly better after 13...♖xc3 14 ♜xc3 d4 15 ♜c1 ♖xc5 16 ♜e1 (16 ♖xd4!? looks too shaky for my taste, but perhaps it is not bad at all) 16...♖xf3+ 17 ♕xf3 ♕e6 18 ♜d3.

9...♖e4 (D)



10 ♕xe7 ♖xc7

10...♜xe7?! 11 0-0 ♖g5 12 ♖e1 ♕d7 13 f3 h6 14 ♖d3 ♜f6 15 ♖e5 ♕e8 16 f4 ♖c4 17 ♕d3 ♖xe5 18 fxe5

♜g5 19 ♕xc4 dxc4 20 ♜c2 and White has a winning position, Lanka-Wach, Linz 1997.

11 ♜c1 b6!

The following classic illustrates what happens if Black delays this move: 11...♖g6 12 0-0 ♕d7 13. ♕d3 f5 14 b4 (White is already much better: he has queenside activity, and Black has almost nothing) 14...♕e8 15 g3 ♜c8 16 ♜c1 ♜f6 17 a3 ♖e7 18 ♖e5 ♜h6 19 f3 ♖f2 20 ♜e2 (White ignores Black's attempt to complicate the position and consolidates his advantage) 20...♖h3+ 21 ♖g2 g5 22 ♖b5 ♕xb5 23 ♕xb5 ♜f6 24 ♕d7 ♜d8 25 b5 ♜h5 26 c6 ♜h6 27 ♖h1 1-0 Botvinnik-Kmochn, Leningrad 1934.

12 c6!?

12 cxb6 axb6 13 ♕d3 with equality is another option.

12...♜d6!

After 12...♖d6 13 0-0 ♖xb5 14 ♖xb5 a6 15 ♜a4 White has good play, and the pawn is not weak at all. Here Black would be well advised to avoid the complications of 15...♖xc6?! 16 ♜xc6 ♕d7 17 ♖d6 ♜a7 18 ♜fc1 ♜c7 19 ♖xf7 ♜xf7 20 ♜xc7 ♕xa4 21 ♜c8 ♜xc8 22 ♜xc8+ ♜f8 23 ♜c3 with a clear advantage for White, Yurtaev-Ivanchuk, Tashkent 1987.

13 0-0 h6 14 ♜d3?

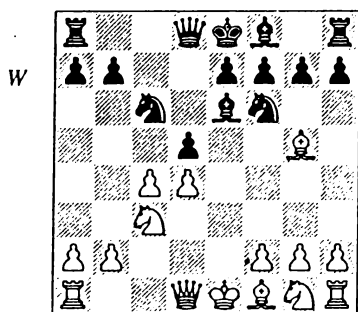
14 ♜c2 f5 15 ♖e2 with a slight advantage would be a lot better. Now Black rounds up the c-pawn.

14...a6 15 ♕a4 b5 16 ♕b3 ♖g5 17 ♖e5 f6 18 f4 ♖f7 19 ♕c2 f5 20 ♕b3 ♜a7 21 ♜c2 ♜c7 22 ♜fc1 ♖d8 23 ♖d1 ♖dxc6

With only some compensation for the pawn, Pähz-Hertan, Vienna 1996.

# 4 6...♗e6!?

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♘f6  
5 ♘c3 ♘c6 6 ♗g5 ♗e6 (D)

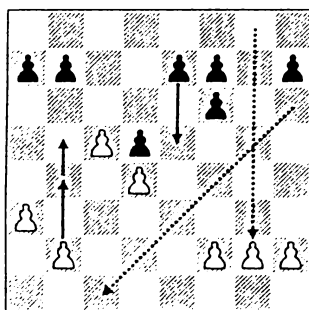


6...♗e6 is not necessarily the strongest move, but I see no reason why it should be inferior to the other possibilities. Moreover, it also promises Black sharper and more interesting play than other lines. That is why I have decided to have this as the main response to 6 ♗g5. 6...♗e6 is the pet variation of prominent players such as Leko and Dreev, who have both achieved some attractive victories in the line. There is no clear-cut way for White to gain an advantage, but for the time being 7 a3 seems to have greatest popularity. White also has several entertaining ideas, such as the 'coffee-house' move 7 ♘ge2, which offers possibilities to fight right from the start to players who want to surprise their opponents.

In this chapter, I have decided to let a lot of the sharp variations talk for themselves, so I recommend careful

study of the theory section, from which plenty of insights into the middlegame themes can also be gained.

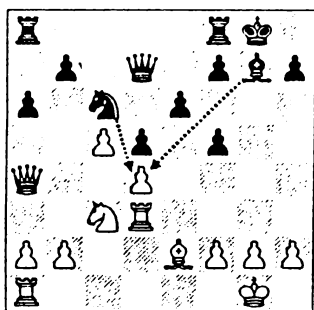
The most common structure after the opening is the following.



White has the better structure, but Black is not necessarily worse. White has the simple plan b2-b4-b5 to put pressure on the queenside, and can potentially create a passed pawn. Black does not have any favourable pawn-pushes, but sometimes he can play ...e7-e5 followed by the advance of the d-pawn. This is often a tactical weapon, and not with promotion in mind. Besides this Black also has the g-file for his rook, and the advantage of the two bishops (which he gets in return for the doubling of his pawns). The dark-squared bishop can prove very useful on h6 or sometimes g7.

Here is an example where Black has already gained a positional advantage:

B



Sax - Miles  
Wijk aan Zee 1989

Black has a superior pawn structure. White will never be able to achieve the b2-b4-b5 advance, and Black has useful pressure against d4. Miles shows with great efficiency how this can be used.

16...♖c7! 17 ♖ad1 b6

White now has no good options. No matter how he continues, he will have problems on the dark squares in the centre.

18 b4

18 cxb6 gives Black a huge positional advantage after 18...♗xb6 as the combination 19 ♔xd5 exd5 20 ♖b3 ♗c7 21 ♖c1 does not work because of 21...♗fe8!! with the idea of ...♖c6, or 22 ♖xc6 ♖xe2! winning.

18...bxc5 19 dxc5?!

Even after the preferable 19 bxc5 Black would have a clear edge with 19...♖fb8.

19...a5!

Black wins a pawn and thereby the game.

20 b5 ♔b4 21 ♖g3

21 c6!? was another try, but still Black would have a good blockade, so

the exchange and the central pawns should decide.

21...♗xc5 22 ♗b3 f4 23 ♖h3 ♖fc8 24 ♔a4 ♗c2

Black is on his way to a winning endgame.

25 ♔d3 ♔xd3 26 ♖hxd3 ♖ab8 27 b6 ♖c4!

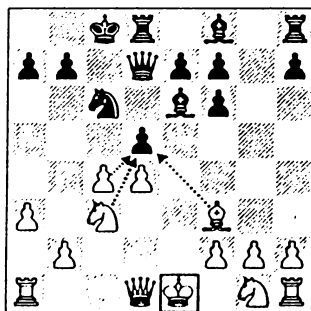
Black takes control of the position with this real grandmaster move.

28 ♖f1 ♔f6 29 ♖1d2 ♗xb3 30 axb3 ♖c6 31 ♖f3 ♔d8

Black succeeded in winning this endgame.

This was a positional win by Black, something that does not happen too often. Normally if Black wins, it is by tactical means. Good examples of this are Miles-Yusupov and Mainka-Miles from the theory section (Lines D3 and D4 respectively). Another is the following:

B



Kharlov - Alvarez Ibarra  
Cañete 1994

White has played a very interesting idea, and Black has not reacted in the best way. Black is now forced to initiate some complications with a piece

sacrifice, which, despite its favourable outcome in practice, is unlikely to stand up to close analytical scrutiny.

10...dxc4!? 11 d5 ♘e5

Black cannot avoid losing material. He would have to give up the exchange after 11...♗c7 12 ♖a4! ♗e5+ 13 ♘ge2.

12 dxe6 ♗xe6 13 ♗e2

Black has two pawns for the piece and a significant lead in development. White's task is certainly difficult over the board.

13...♙h6 14 ♗e4?

Wasting time with a regrouping that does not work at all. White has good chances of a successful defence and a full point after 14 ♙d1! ♙xd1+ 15 ♘xd1 ♙d8 16 ♘e3! with the idea of blocking the bishop's diagonal. Following 16...♘d3+ 17 ♚f1 it seems that Black cannot do White any great harm.

14...♙d7 15 ♙e2

After 15 ♘ge2 f5 16 ♗h4 ♘xf3+ 17 gx3 ♙d2 Black has excellent play for his material, but White is not without chances. One line is 18 ♙b1 (18 0-0? does not work, because of 18...♙xe2! 19 ♘xc2 ♗xe2 20 ♗xh6?? ♙g8+) 18...♙hd8 19 b3 cxb3 20 ♗a4, when Black's game is preferable, but gun-smoke still irritates the eye.

15...f5 16 ♗h4 ♙d2 17 ♘f3?

17 ♙d1! was the answer again. White is then hoping for the line 17...♘d3+? (17...♙hd8! 18 ♙xd2 ♙xd2 keeps the pressure, but still White got rid of one of the rooks) 18 ♚f1 ♘xb2 19 ♙xd2 ♙xd2 20 ♗d4!, when White has good counterplay. A very plausible line is 20...♙d8 21 ♗c5+!, when Black has no good moves, and is forced to play 21...♗c6 22 ♗xf5+ e6 23 ♗c2, which is attractive for White.

17...♘xf3+ 18 gx3 ♙xb2

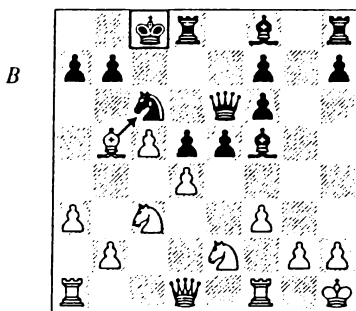
White's pieces now lack coherence, and he decides to give up the knight to get the king into safety.

19 0-0 ♙g7 20 ♙xc4 ♗g6+ 21 ♚h1 ♙xc3 22 ♙ac1 ♗f6 23 ♗xf6 ♙xf6 24 ♙xf7+ ♚b8

Black has a winning ending, which he concluded with great efficiency.

This was a very typical sort of game for this variation. White goes for the attack right from the start, and Black replies with various tactical ideas, and the outcome is almost always very difficult to anticipate. It depends on who is the better player on the day.

White's strongest plans are to prevent Black from getting counterplay, and not open up the position for his two bishops. A very good example of how this can be done is the following.



Lanka – Leko  
Budapest 1996

This position occurs from Line I in the theoretical section. White is better. His central control is not about to be broken, and he has good attacking chances against Black's rather fragile

queenside. That is why Black decides to create some confusion in the white camp.

14...♖h6 15 ♖xc6 bxc6 16 ♞e1  
♙e3!?

Fighting for control of d4, a fight Black is doomed to lose.

17 ♜a4 ♞d7 18 ♜g3!

Eliminating the light-squared bishop would please White greatly, and it is also nice to get rid of the bishop on e3. Black now goes in for complications but they turn out to favour White.

18...exd4 19 ♝ce2 ♙d3 20 ♝xd4  
♙b5 21 ♜d1 ♜e5 22 ♜gf5

Winning the queen, and thereby the game.

22...♙xd4 23 ♞xe5 ♙xe5 24 ♜d2  
♞e8 25 a4 ♙c4 26 ♞c1 ♙b3 27 ♜e3  
♙xa4 28 f4

Crowning the masterpiece with the win of a piece.

28...d4 29 ♜e4 d3 30 ♜xa4 d2 31  
♞d1 ♙xb2 32 ♜xc6+ ♙b8 33 h3  
♞e1+ 34 ♙h2 ♞c7 35 ♜b5+ 1-0

When White takes on f6 Black has a choice that is worth thinking about in advance. In the following game Black decides to go into another structure than the one previously discussed in this chapter, by recapturing with the e-pawn (see next diagram).

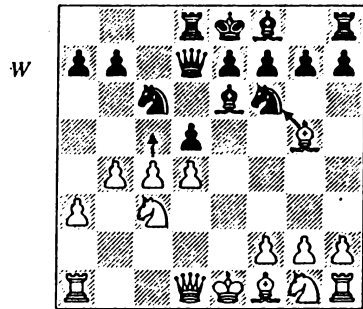
9 ♙xf6

White is more or less forced to take. If he, for instance, plays 9 c5 he will find himself in deep trouble at once after 9...♝e4! 10 ♝xc4 dxe4.

9...exf6?!

This recapture helps with the natural development of the bishop, but gives White a far superior structure.

10 c5!



Lanka – Bauer

Cappelle la Grande 1994

The queenside expansion is ready to begin.

10...g6 11 ♙b5!

This bishop manoeuvre illustrates fine understanding of the position. The bishop could not go to d3, because of the d-pawn's fragility, and it does not wish to take the e2-square from the knight, so it puts itself in the way for the pawn, but only temporarily.

11...♙h6

The bishop has no other good squares.

12 ♝ge2 0-0 13 0-0 f5?

This kills the bishop on e6, after which White is much better. Better is 13...♞fe8 and ...♙g4 to create some counterplay, although White is still better.

14 ♙a4 ♜e7 15 f4!

White closes the position, and thereby dooms the bishops to passivity.

15...♙g7 16 ♜d2 ♙c8 17 ♞ad1  
♞fe8 18 ♙h1 ♜e3 19 ♜a2

White does not want to exchange queens since this would lessen the impact of his space advantage. Every

exchange makes it easier for Black to find useful squares for his pieces. Instead White starts to exert pressure on d5, which is not so easy to protect.

19...♖e7 20 ♜f3 ♜e6 21 h3 h6 22 ♙b3 ♝h8 23 ♜fd3

Making way for the knight to improve its position.

23...♜ed7 24 ♞g1 g5

Black is getting pretty desperate. What to do about the knight's forthcoming invasion? His answer fails to solve his problems, and only creates new ones.

25 ♞f3 gxf4 26 ♞e2 ♜e4 27 ♜d2 ♞e7 28 ♞xf4 ♞g6 29 ♞xg6+ fxf6 30 ♜e3

Winning the queen, and, of course, the game.

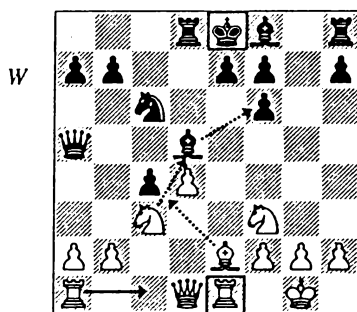
30...♝h7 31 ♜ee1 g5 32 ♜xe4 dxe4 33 ♞xg5+ hxg5 34 ♜xg5 1-0

Naturally there are also good games with this approach by Black. I will not go further into this, since my goal with this example was to show how White should play the position. However, it is worth noting that Kasparov refrained from giving Black this structure in his game with Dreev (Line I in the theory section), but then his pawn was on f3, and the bishop had a chance to enter the position on the dark squares.

Quite often Black has the chance to grab a pawn in the opening. Sometimes he can hold on to it, but sometimes White's initiative is more important than the pawn. The next diagram features an example of the latter case:

12 ♜c1

White tries to regain his pawn at once. This gives Black the chance to win an exchange, but matters are not



Markowski – Czerwonski  
Polish Ch 1994

so simple. Black is behind in development, and his king could easily be caught in the centre.

12...♙h6 13 ♞xd5! ♙xc1?

Greedy. Black could have kept the balance with 13...♜xd5! 14 ♙xc4 ♙xc1 15 ♙xd5 ♜xd5 16 ♜xc1 ♜g8 17 ♜f4 ♜g6, when White has to fight for squares and equality with 18 ♜e4.

14 ♞xf6+!

This little interposition makes all the difference.

14...exf6 15 ♙xc4+ ♝f8

Maybe Black would have had better chances of a successful defence after 15...♝d7! 16 ♜xc1 ♜he8 17 ♜xe8 ♝xe8 18 ♜e3+ ♞e7 19 ♜b3, but White has an awful lot of play for the exchange.

16 ♜xc1 ♝g7 17 d5!

This forces Black to return his extra exchange, after which he is definitely worse due to his wrecked pawn-structure, and the lack of safety for his king.

17...♜xd5

17...♞b4 loses to 18 ♞d4 ♜he8 (18...h6 19 ♞f5+ ♝f8 puts up more

resistance, but Black is in deep trouble) 19  $\text{Qf5+}$   $\text{Kh8}$  20  $\text{Nxc8+}$   $\text{Nxc8}$  21  $\text{Wh6}$   $\text{Nc1+}$  22  $\text{Qf1}$  with mate to follow.

18  $\text{Qxd5}$   $\text{Wxd5}$  19  $\text{Wf4}$   $\text{Nd8}$  20 b3  $\text{Qd4}$  21  $\text{Qxd4}$   $\text{Wxd4}$  22  $\text{Wg3+}$   $\text{Qf8}$  23 h3

White has no need to rush to exploit his advantage. The black king will never become safe, and his pawns will never look healthy.

23...  $\text{Nd7}$  24  $\text{Ne3}$   $\text{Wd1+}$  25  $\text{Kh2}$   $\text{Wd6}$  26 f4

No more exchanges, of course.

26...  $\text{Wd2}$  27  $\text{Nc3}$   $\text{Nd4}$  28  $\text{Nc8+}$   $\text{Nd8}$  29  $\text{Nc7}$   $\text{Nd7}$  30  $\text{Nc3}$

White did not succeed directly, but before he could try a more sophisticated form of attack Black decides to lose the game. Presumably these decisions were influenced by time-trouble.

30...  $\text{Nd4}$  31 f5  $\text{Wf4?}$  32  $\text{Nc8+}$

White is winning.

## The Theory of 6... $\text{Qe6}$

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4  $\text{Qf6}$  5  $\text{Qc3}$   $\text{Qc6}$  6  $\text{Qg5}$   $\text{Qe6}$

Here it can be hard for White to decide which variation to adopt. Some of the lines mentioned below are not intimidating, while others are quite interesting. I believe 7 a3 is the strongest idea, but 7  $\text{Qge2}$  is also attractive.

A:	7 c5	66
B:	7 $\text{Qe2}$	66
C:	7 $\text{Wd2}$	67
D:	7 $\text{Qxf6}$	67
E:	7 g3	69
F:	7 $\text{Qf3}$	69
G:	7 $\text{Qge2}$	70
H:	7 $\text{Nc1}$	70
I:	7 a3	70

A)

7 c5

This is not really dangerous for Black, as he creates immediate counterplay against the centre.

7...  $\text{Qe4!}$  8  $\text{Qh4}$   $\text{Qxc3}$  9 bxc3  $\text{Wa5}$  10  $\text{Wd2}$   $\text{Qf5}$  11 a4 e5

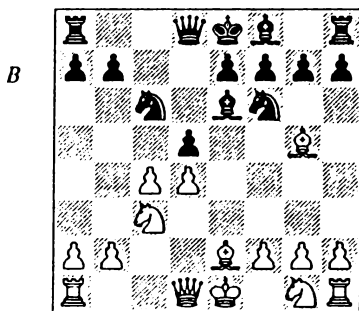
Black has already equalized.

12  $\text{Qb5}$   $\text{Qd7}$  13  $\text{Qf3}$  e4 14  $\text{Qxc6}$  bxc6 15  $\text{Qe5}$   $\text{Wa6}$  16 c4  $\text{Qe6}$

The game is equal, Gelfand-Dreev, Munich rpd 1994. One must be wary of drawing conclusions from a rapid-play game, but still White did not prove anything.

B)

7  $\text{Qe2}$  (D)



This is one of the more logical continuations. White continues his development, and may sometimes play  $\text{Qf3}$  to attack d5.

7...  $\text{Wa5}$  8  $\text{Qf3}$  dxc4

8...  $\text{Qe4!?}$  seems adequate as well.

Black will come under some pressure, but may succeed in keeping the pawn, for example 9 0-0  $\text{Qxc3}$  10 bxc3 dxc4 11  $\text{Qf4}$   $\text{Qd5}$  12  $\text{Nb1}$  e6 13  $\text{Wc2}$   $\text{Qa3}$  14  $\text{Nfe1}$   $\text{Qe7}$  15  $\text{Qe5}$  0-0 16  $\text{Qg5}$   $\text{Qg6}$  17 h4 f5 with a preferable position,

Glavina-Izeta, Spanish Cht 1995. Still, I feel that White should be able to improve on this game, so following it should be regarded as a gamble, but perhaps a profitable one.

9 0-0 ♖d8

On 9...0-0 Rogers claims that White can gain an advantage with 10 ♖c1!

10 ♖c1 h6 11 ♙d2!

11 ♙e3 would restrict the mobility of White's bishop severely, and Black could gain a significant advantage with 11...g5! intending to finish his development without worrying about the defence of h6.

11...♖xd4! 12 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 13 b4!

The only way to prove compensation.

13...♖d8

13...♖f5 is less effective. White would have a clear plus after 14 ♙e3 ♖h4 15 ♖a3 – Rogers.

14 ♙e3 ♖d7

Here White could have retained the tension with 15 ♙xa7 g5 16 ♖b5 but instead in Rogers-Dreev, Biel IZ 1993, he played 15 ♙d1?!, after which 15...a6 gave Black the better game.

C)

7 ♖d2

This is also quite a natural move, but like 7 ♙e2 it is not very dangerous for Black. After the simple 7...g6 8 ♙xf6 exf6 9 c5 h5 10 ♙b5 ♙h6 11 f4 0-0 12 ♙xc6 bxc6 13 ♖ge2 ♖b8 White did not think he had any reasons to play on, and a draw was agreed in Sveshnikov-Oll, Podolsk 1993.

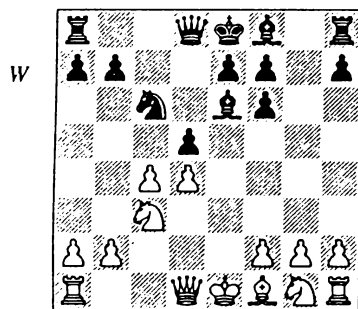
D)

7 ♙xf6

This is actually rather a dubious move. Black gains good counterplay in the g-file, and his grip on the centre is not really loosened. Nevertheless, this has been one of the more frequently played moves.

7...gxf6! (D)

This is really the only good move. White gains a slight edge after 7...exf6 8 c5.



Now:

D1: 8 ♖f3	67
D2: 8 ♖h5	67
D3: 8 ♖d2	68
D4: 8 c5	68

D1)

8 ♖f3 ♖d7 9 c5 ♙g4! 10 ♙e2 ♙xf3! 11 ♙xf3 e6

Black is better due to the weakness of the white d4-pawn.

12 0-0 ♙g7 13 ♙e2 a6! 14 ♖a4 0-0 15 ♖fd1 f5 16 ♖d3 ♖c7! 17 ♖ad1 b6

Black has a clear advantage, Sax-Miles, Wijk aan Zee 1989 – see p. 62.

D2)

8 ♖h5

Black can now obtain good play with 8...♖b6!, a move based on the

idea 9 0-0-0 ♖xd4 10 ♗xd5 ♕xd5 11 ♜xd5 ♖h6+.

Instead 8... ♜a5? was the first step towards disaster in Howell-Maruschenko, Hastings 1991: 9 cxd5 0-0-0 10 0-0-0 ♗b4 11 ♖c4 ♗xd5 12 ♗ge2 ♜g8 13 ♕xd5 ♕xd5 14 ♗f4 e6 15 ♗cxd5 ♖d6 16 ♗c7+ 1-0.

D3)

8 ♜d2 ♜a5 9 c5

9 ♗xd5 is met by 9... ♜xd2+ 10 ♗xd2 0-0-0.

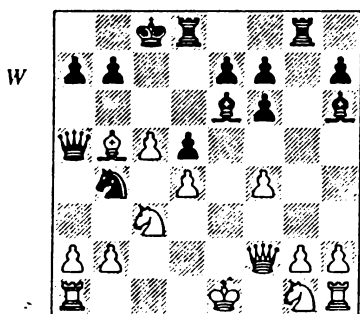
9... 0-0-0 10 ♖b5

Yusupov recommends 10 ♗ge2 followed by g3 and ♖g2.

10... ♜g8

Black naturally exploits the open file.

11 f4 ♖h6 12 ♜f2 ♗b4 (D)



White is already under severe pressure at this point. It is clear that his strategy has completely failed.

13 ♜d1 ♖f5 14 a3?!

After the superior 14 ♗ge2 Black has the pleasant choice between 14... a6 and 14... ♗c2+ 15 ♗f1 e5 16 ♗g3 ♜g4 17 fxe5!? ♜f4 18 ♗xf5 ♜xf2+ 19 ♗xf2 fxe5!, with complications favouring Black.

14... ♗c2+ 15 ♗d2 ♖e4

White is dead lost.

16 ♗ge2 ♜xg2 17 ♜h4 ♗xd4 18 ♜h3+ f5 19 ♖d3 ♗xe2 20 ♖xe2 ♖xf4+ 21 ♗e1 d4 22 ♖f3 dxc3 23 ♜xd8+ ♗xd8 24 ♜xg2 cxb2+

0-1 Miles-Yusupov, Tunis IZ 1985.

D4)

8 c5

A natural move, by which White tries to make the bishop on e6 look silly. However, he does not manage to do so by this move-order.

8... ♜d7 9 ♖b5 ♜g8!?

The most natural, and also the sharpest move.

10 g3 0-0-0 11 ♜h5?!

White should care more about his development. Now Black takes over the initiative.

11... ♖g4! 12 ♜xh7

12 ♜xf7? loses immediately to 12... ♜g7.

12... ♜e6+ 13 ♗f1

13 ♗ge2 is met by 13... ♗xd4! with a powerful attack.

13... ♗xd4!

Black does not give White any rest, but sacrifices a full rook to get another piece into the game.

14 ♜xg8

14 ♜e1 is inferior on account of 14... ♜f5!, after which White will be mated if he takes the rook: 15 ♜xg8? ♖h3+ 16 ♗xh3 ♜xh3+ 17 ♗g1 ♗f3#.

14... ♖h6! 15 ♖e8!

Very strong play. White loses after 15 ♜h7? ♖h3+ 16 ♗xh3 ♜xh3+ 17 ♗c1 ♖d2+, while his position is inferior after 15 ♜xd8+ ♗xd8 16 h3 ♖h5 17 ♜e1 ♜c8.

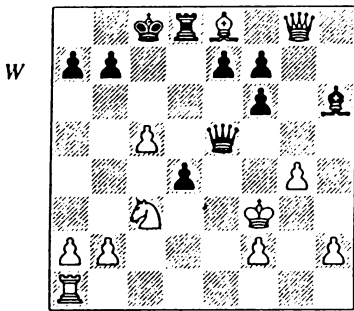
15...♙h3+ 16 ♖xh3 ♜xh3+ 17 ♜e1 ♖c2+ 18 ♜e2

18 ♜d1? would be met by 18...♜f5! 19 ♜e2 d4, with a winning attack.

18...♖d4+ 19 ♜e1

19 ♜d3? ♜f5+ 20 ♜xd4 e5#, and 19 ♜d1 ♜h5+ 20 g4 ♜h3! win for Black.

19...♖c2+ 20 ♜e2 ♜h5+ 21 g4 ♜e5+ 22 ♜f3 ♖xa1 23 ♜xa1 d4 (D)



24 ♖e2??

24 ♜d1! would have saved the game.

The position is equal after 24...♙g5!?! 25 ♜g2! dxc3.

24...d3 25 ♖c3 ♜xh2 26 ♜d1 ♜h3+ 27 ♜e4 ♜g2+ 28 f3 f5+!

0-1 Mainka-Miles, Bad Wörishofen 1989. White is mated.

E)

7 g3

This does not seem right. White does not have time for this kind of play, even though he did well in the main game here.

7...♜a5

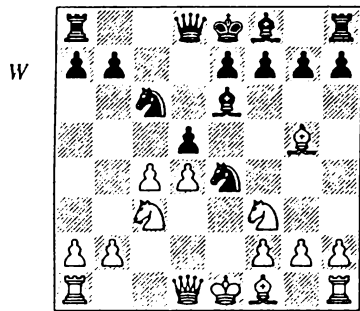
7...♜b6! seems to be an improvement. White could easily be worse after 8 ♙xf6 exf6 9 cxd5? ♜xb2 10 ♜c1? ♙b4, when Black wins.

8 ♙g2 ♖e4 9 ♙xe4! dxe4 10 d5 0-0-0 11 ♙d2 ♖b4 12 ♖xe4 ♙f5 13 ♜b1 ♜b6 14 ♖e2 e6 15 ♙e3 ♜a6 16 0-0 ♜b8 17 ♖d4 ♜xc4 18 ♖xf5 exf5 19 ♙f4+ ♜a8 20 ♖g5 ♜xd5 21 ♜d1 ♖d3 22 ♜xd3 ♜xd3 23 ♖xf7 ♜xb1+ 24 ♜xb1 ♙c5 25 ♖xh8 ♜xh8 26 ♜d1

White has the better endgame, Tal-Hodgson, Sochi 1986.

F)

7 ♖f3 ♖e4! (D)



8 cxd5

Or:

a) 8 ♙d3? offers no compensation after 8...♖xc3 9 bxc3 dxc4 10 ♙e4 ♙d5 11 ♜e2 h6 12 ♙h4 ♜d7 13 ♜b1 0-0-0 14 ♙xd5 ♜xd5 15 0-0 ♜d7, Mainka-Vodep, Vienna 1991.

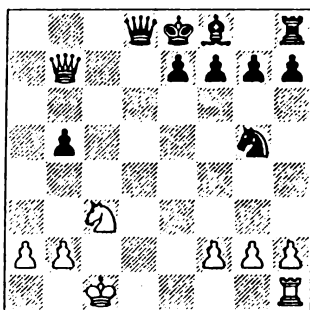
b) 8 ♖xe4 dxe4 9 d5 exf3 10 dxe6 ♜a5+ 11 ♜d2 gives Black the chance of taking a draw with 11...♜xd2+! (11...♜e5+?! 12 ♙e3 ♜xe6 13 gxf3 ♜d8 14 ♜c3 ♜f5 15 ♙e2 e6 16 0-0 gives White good attacking prospects, e.g. 16...♜g6+ 17 ♜h1 ♙b4 18 ♜b3 0-0 19 a3 ♙d6 20 ♙g1 ♜h5 21 ♙g2 ♜d7 22 ♙ag1 with a strong initiative, Thiede-von Alvensleben, Regionalliga Niedersachsen 1990) 12 ♙xd2 fxe6 13

gxf3 g6 14 ♖c3 e5 15 f4 ♘d4! 16 0-0-0 ♗h6 17 ♗xd4 exd4 1/2-1/2 D.Popović-N.Danilov, Tallinn U-14 Wch 1997. The fact that this was an under-14 game does not spoil the impression that Black's chances are no worse.

8...♗xd5 9 ♘xe4 ♗xe4 10 ♗c4 ♖a5+ 11 ♗d2 ♗f5 12 ♘g5 ♗d5

Black has good play, Minasian-Shurygin, Dečín 1996.

B



G)

7 ♘ge2!?

This is a very interesting idea. White aims directly at annoying the bishop on e6. Not too many games have been played with this, so it is difficult to come to any final conclusions, but still it deserves close attention.

7...dxc4 8 ♘f4!

White does not gain anything from 8 ♗xf6 exf6 9 d5 ♘e5 10 ♘g3 ♗g4 11 f3 ♗d7 12 f4 ♘g4 13 ♖e2+ ♖e7 14 ♘ge4 0-0-0 15 ♖xc4+ ♗b8 16 0-0-0 ♖b4 with more than equality for Black, del Rio-Izeta, Pamplona 1994/5.

8...♘xd4

8...♖xd4!? is an interesting alternative, which might prove stronger. The idea is 9 ♘xe6 ♖e5+. Still, White has a lead in development, so the outcome is unclear.

9 ♘xe6 ♘xe6 10 ♗xc4 ♘g5?!

10...a6! is an improvement, though White has a fine initiative.

11 ♖a4+!

The start of a brilliant idea.

11...♘d7 12 0-0-0 a6 13 ♗xd7! ♖xd7 14 ♗b5 axb5 15 ♖xa8+ ♖d8 16 ♖xb7 (D)

White has a very strong attack, and in two games Black was not able to find any defence:

a) 16...e5?! 17 ♖xb5+ ♖d7 18 ♖xc5+ ♘e6 19 ♗d1 ♖b7 20 f4 ♗c7 21 f5 and White won in Velimirović-Cirić, Yugoslavia 1966.

b) 16...f6 17 ♗d1 ♖a5 18 f4 ♘e6 19 f5 ♘d8 20 ♖d7+ ♗f7 21 ♖d5+ (21 ♖xd8? ♖xd8 22 ♗xd8 g6 gives Black the better chances) 21...e6 (21...♗e8 22 ♘b5! planning 23 ♘d6+) 22 ♖d7+! (22 ♖xd8? ♖xd8 23 ♗xd8 b4! 24 ♘b5 exf5 is only equal, Mortensen-Fette, Malmö 1987) 22...♗e7 23 ♘xb5 ♗f8 24 ♘d6+ ♗g8 25 ♖xe7 exf5 26 ♗b1 winning.

H)

7 ♗c1

This move does not do any good for White. Black is fine after the continuation 7...♖a5 8 c5 ♘e4 9 ♗e3 g6, Berndt-Blecken, Regionalliga Niedersachsen 1991.

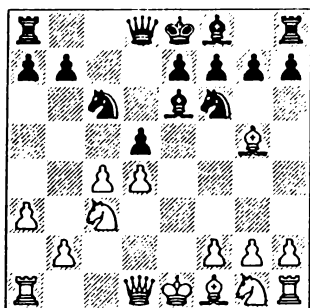
I)

7 a3 (D)

7...♖d7

Instead 7...♗g4!? has been played by Dreev, reason enough to trust the move. 8 f3 ♗e6 9 c5 g6 (the point of Black's play is that the normally inferior structure after ...exf6 is viable

B



since White has played f3, and so weakened the c1-h6 diagonal) 10 ♙b5 (10 ♙xf6!? is a try, but Black should be fine after 10...exf6 11 ♚d2 (11 ♙b5 ♙h6!) 11...h5 with a resemblance to Line C) 10...♙g7 11 ♖ge2 0-0 12 0-0 ♙f5 13 b4 a6 14 ♙a4 h6 15 ♙e3 ♖e8 16 ♚d2 ♖h7 17 ♖g3 e6 18 ♖ge2 g5 19 ♙c2 ♙xc2 20 ♚xc2+ f5 with an interesting fight ahead, Kasparov-Dreev, Moscow rpd 1996.

### 8 ♙xf6

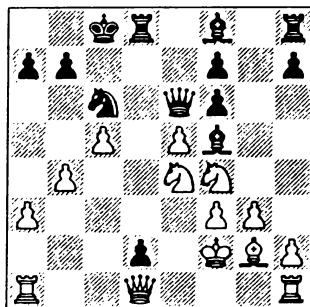
8 ♙e2 0-0-0 9 c5 ♖c4 10 ♖f3 ♙f5 11 ♙f4 f6 12 0-0 g5 13 ♙e3 e5 14 dxex5 d4 left White struggling for a draw in the game Kobaliya-Khalifman, Russian Club Cup (Maikop) 1998, which he achieved after 15 e6 ♚xe6 16 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 17 ♙xd4 ♙xc5 18 ♖b5 ♖b8 19 ♙xc5 ♖xc5 20 ♚c1 ♚e5 1/2-1/2.

### 8...gxf6 9 c5!

9 g3? led to a catastrophe in Topalov-Leko, Vienna 1996: 9...0-0-0 10 ♙g2 ♙g4! 11 f3 ♙e6 12 c5 ♙f5 13 b4

e5 14 ♖ge2 ♚e6 15 dxex5 d4! (Black takes over the initiative) 16 ♖e4 d3 17 ♖f4 d2+ 18 ♖f2 (D).

B



18...♚c4! (White is defenceless) 19 ♙h3 ♙xh3 20 ♖xh3 ♚d4+ 21 ♖g2 ♖xc5 22 ♚b3 ♖c4 23 ♙hd1 f5 24 ♖eg5 ♙d7 25 f4 ♙g7 26 ♖f2 ♚d5+ 27 ♖f3 ♙xa1 28 ♙xa1 ♙e8 0-1.

### 9...♙g4 10 f3 ♙f5 11 ♙b5 e5?!

Black does no better with 11...♙g8?!, as White can immediately seize the initiative: 12 g4 ♙g6 13 ♖ge2 h5 14 gxh5! ♙xh5 15 ♖g3 ♙h8 16 ♚e2 ♙g6 17 f4! ♙h4 18 0-0 ♙h6 19 ♙ae1 ♖f8 20 f5 with a position close to winning, Sveshnikov-Soln, Bled 1998.

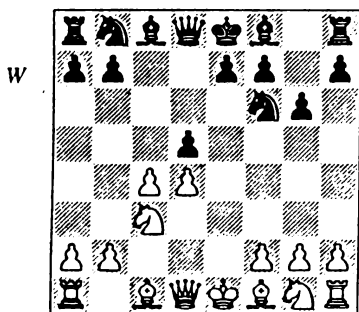
Black should try 11...h5! with the idea ...♙g8 and ...♙h6. Tests are needed to see if Black is OK, but I suspect that he is.

### 12 ♖ge2 0-0-0 13 0-0 ♚e6 14 ♖h1

White has emerged from the opening with a small plus, Lanka-Leko, Budapest 1996.

# 5 5...g6

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♘f6  
5 ♘c3 g6 (D)



First of all, I want to make it clear that because I cannot recommend this line for Black, this chapter has been written with the intention to educate white players only.

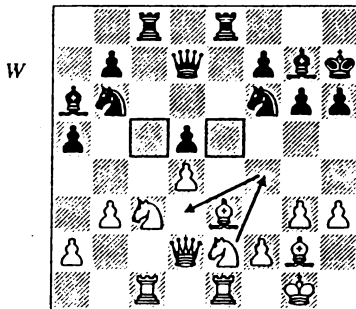
This line is not seen so much in high-level tournaments any more, and for a good reason: White simply has a very secure plus in the main line. Still from time to time, players like Adams and Timman try out some new ideas, and use the variation as a surprise weapon. In my opinion the variation is insufficient for equality, and therefore not to be recommended.

In this chapter I mainly examine positions where White forces Black to sacrifice the pawn on d5, and then returns it with d5-d6, and Black recaptures with the e-pawn. Other ways of dealing with the position are not so critical.

I have divided the positions into three categories: the black pawn is on d5; the black pawn is on d6; and White grabs the pawn on b7.

## The black pawn is on d5

I have selected the first example to show how the pawn-structure is more suitable for the white pieces. Besides the bishop on a6, the knight's position on b6 is also awkward, since it has nowhere to go, and is not doing too well where it is.



**Dolmatov – Adams**  
*Hastings 1989/90*

Black has just played 22...d6-d5, to prevent White from playing d4-d5, which, at least, would annoy the b6-knight. Black's position is solid, but he has problems with his queenside minor pieces, and for this reason White generally holds the advantage

in these positions. On balance, Black should probably have left his pawn on d6.

23 ♖f4 ♜c7 24 ♘d3

Following 22...d5, two excellent squares have become available to the white knight. Black has no choice but to give up the bishop-pair. Even though Black is not proud of the a6-bishop, its exchange will leave his pawns on light squares vulnerable for the rest of the game.

24...♙xd3 25 ♗xd3 ♜cc8 26 a4!

Dolmatov is rightly the champion of this line. He understands White's strategy of gradual improvement very well. Here a5 is transformed into a permanent weakness, while the knight on b6 is forced to keep an eye on d5.

26...♙f8 27 ♙d2 ♜xe1+ 28 ♜xe1 ♗d8 29 ♘e2

White slowly improves the position of his pieces. The knight is more active on f4, where it retains the option of manoeuvring ♘d3-e5/c5, while it exerts pressure on d5. Also Black has to respect the immediate threat on a5.

29...♘a8 30 ♖f4 b6 31 ♗b5 ♜c2 32 ♙e3 ♙b4 33 ♜c1 ♜xc1+ 34 ♙xc1 ♖g7 35 ♙e3!

The pawn will not run away.

35...♙d6 36 ♘xd5 ♘c7 37 ♘xc7 ♗xc7 38 ♗c6

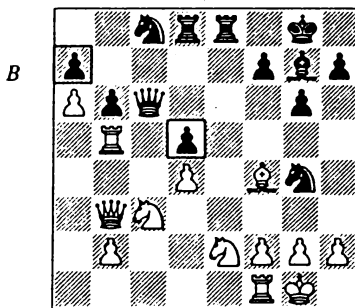
White is completely winning.

38...♗e7 39 ♗xb6 ♙xg3 40 ♗xa5 ♙d6 41 ♗b5 g3 42 a5 1-0

Wonderful play by Dolmatov.

Next we consider the consequences of Black failing to meet a4 with ...a5.

White is better in the next diagram, which is reached via Line B below. a7 is a permanent weakness, and d5 is not



Stoica – Suci  
Romanian Cht 1994

too healthy either. White's bishop is no inferior to its counterpart, even though the g7-bishop might appear to exert some pressure against d4. The knight on g4 is doing nothing, and the one on c8 is clearly misplaced. However, White also has his problems. The rook is a little strange on b5, the other rook has no better square than d1, and the knights not ideally placed, protecting each other.

20...♘f6 21 ♙e5 ♘d6?!

Black enters a minefield of complications, from which White gains most. Even though Black exchanges off both his knights, White solves almost all the problems listed above.

Black should have chosen instead 21...♘e7.

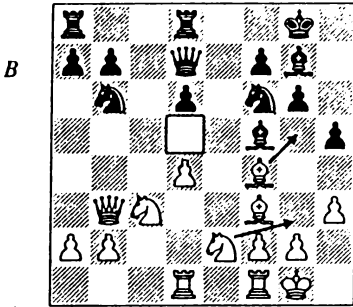
22 ♙xf6 ♘xb5 23 ♙xd8 ♘xc3 24 ♘xc3

24 ♗xc3? ♗b5! would give Black a lot of play for no good reason.

24...♜xd8 25 ♜d1 h5 26 h3 ♙f6 27 ♗b5!

White has a large plus. The bishop is hopeless, and the knight will have an easy job attacking d5 and a7.





**Ehlvest – Timman**  
*Riga 1995*

pressure on the central squares, while Black has some coordination problems. In this game Black tries to activate his rook, but it doesn't bring him a lot of luck.

15...♖ac8?!

The start of a bad plan. Black would have done better with 15...d5, as in the previous example.

16 ♘g3 ♗c4? 17 ♙g5

Threatening 18 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 19 ♘d5! with material gains.

17...♗dc8

17...d5 doesn't work because of 18 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 19 ♘d5!. 17...♗cc8 was the lesser evil.

18 ♙e2 ♙e6

Black has problems finding the right square for his bishop. This is what provoked this move. No better was 18...♗c7 19 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 20 ♘xf5 ♗xf5 21 ♘b5 ♗c2 (21...♗d7 22 ♘xa7 wins for White) 22 ♘xc7, which is totally winning for White too.

19 d5! ♙xh3!?

19...♘fxd5 20 ♘d5 ♙xd5 21 ♗xd5! was the idea behind 19 d5.

20 ♙xc4 ♗xc4 21 ♙xf6!

White is in no hurry to cash in. First he eliminates all possible counterplay.

21...♙xf6 22 ♘ce4 ♙e5 23 gxf3 ♗xh3 24 f4!

24 ♗f3 h4 would give Black counter-chances.

24...♙g7

After 24...♙d4+, 25 ♘f2 ♗h4 26 ♗f3 is the safest win. Black has nothing for his heavy investment.

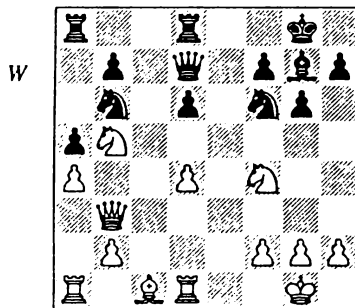
25 ♘g5 ♗g4 26 ♗f3 ♙d4+ 27 ♗xd4!

All in all just a simplification, but the more exchanges, the more sure White will be.

27...♗xd4 28 ♗e3 1-0

Not a very impressive game from Timman, who clearly was trapped in a line he didn't know exactly how to handle. Ehlvest, on the other hand, didn't hesitate to exploit the chance given to him by Black's faulty play.

In the next example the light-squared bishops have been exchanged, and it seems harder for White to get some action going, but still he finds a fine way to get an advantage.



**Sax – Gipslis**  
*Copenhagen 1994*

In this position White holds a small advantage, mainly because of the lack of coordination amongst the black forces. So far nothing new. In this game Black tries to defend, rather than trying to create counterplay. The pawn stays on d6, and the rest of the pieces try to hold on, rather than improving their positions.

18 ♖c3 ♙a6!

18...♗c6 is worse, since this puts the queen on an awkward square, and it will need to find a new one after 19 ♙e3 and 20 ♙a1.

19 ♙e3 ♙c8 20 h3 ♙c4

Generally I don't like these rook manoeuvres to b4. A regrouping starting with 20...♗d8, to hold all the dark squares, is more to my taste, but I wouldn't bet that it is better.

21 ♖d3!

Threatening the tactical blow 22 ♖c5!

21...♗d8?!

21...♗f5! would have given Black better chances to fight for equality. The queen on d8 doesn't harmonize with the rook on c4. I believe the queen should be on a light square to offer some support.

22 ♖e5!? dxe5

22...♙c7 23 ♖b5 ♙e7 24 ♙g5 dxe5 25 dxe5 ♙d7 26 exf6 ♙xf6 27 ♙xf6 ♗xf6 gives White a slight edge, since the rook is strangely placed at a6. Still, maybe it was a better option.

23 dxe5 ♗e8 24 exf6 ♙b4 25 ♗c2 ♙xf6 26 b3!

Now both the black rooks are rather oddly placed.

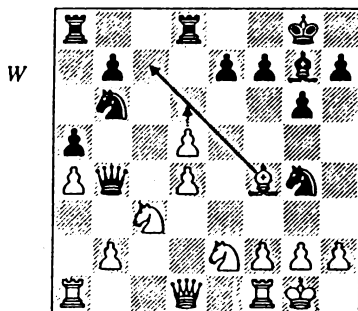
26...♗e6

26...♙a8?! is met by the nasty trick 27 ♙a1 ♙c8 28 ♖d5!

27 ♙ab1 ♙a8 28 ♖b5 ♙c8 29 ♗d3 ♙h4 30 ♗d2 ♙b4 31 ♗d3 ♙h4 1/2-1/2

White now agreed to a draw due to his problems with the clock, but he could have obtained a close to winning position with 32 ♗d6! ♙c6 33 ♗b8+.

The next example is not directly connected with the lines I suggest in the theoretical section, meaning that the starting position could never happen to you, if you follow my suggestions. Still it is a very beautiful illustration of the tactics which can occur in this line.



J. Polgar – Skembris  
Corfu 1990

16 ♙c7!

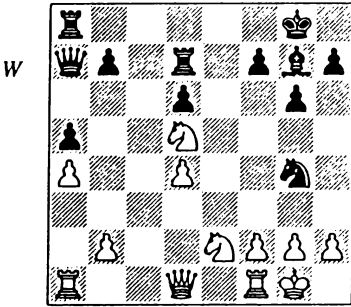
16 d6 would be met by the surprising 16...e5!

16...♙d7 17 d6

An forceful way to obtain the desired structure. Here it leads to a beautiful combination.

17...exd6 18 ♙xb6 ♗xb6 19 ♖d5 ♗a7 (D)

19...♗c6 will cost the queen its head after 20 ♖ef4 ♖f6 21 ♙c1. 19...♗a6 is maybe the best move, but Black is still uncomfortable after 20 ♖c3.



20 ♖ec3! ♔xd4  
20...♗f6 21 ♖b5 ♔b8 22 ♖b6 is  
easy to understand.

21 h3!

21 ♔xd4 is wrong, due to 21...♗xd4  
22 ♖b5 ♗f6!.

21...♖h6

21...♔xd1 22 ♗axd1 ♗f6 23 ♖b6.

22 ♔xd4 ♗xd4 23 ♖b5 ♗xb2 24  
♗a2! ♗g7 25 ♖b6

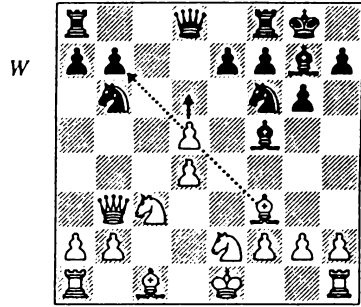
White went on to win with her extra  
exchange.

### White grabs the pawn on b7

This little section will mainly try to il-  
lustrate the dangers White has to han-  
dle, if he, in his greed, takes the  
poisoned pawn on b7. Even though  
this might give some advantage if it's  
played with great care, I feel that the  
positional handling of the position of-  
fers at least as good winning chances,  
and has a far better record.

At the same time, it's important to  
note that if Black recaptures on d6  
with his queen, the pawn should be  
taken (see the theory section).

The following game illustrates what  
White is up against if he decides to  
grab the pawn.



Dolmatov – Tomaszewski  
*Polanica Zdroj 1987*

11 d6

Probably premature. 11 0-0 ♗d3 12  
d6 exd6 would give Black some prob-  
lems with the bishop.

11...exd6 12 ♗xb7!? ♗b8 13 ♗f3  
♖bd5 14 ♔d1 ♗xc3 15 bxc3 ♔a5

The extra pawn will come under a  
lot of pressure. To my mind, there are  
no reasons why White should be pre-  
ferred here.

16 0-0 ♗fc8 17 a4 ♗g4!

Exchanging the light-squared bis-  
hop gives Black chances due to the im-  
mobility of White's pawn-centre.

18 ♗a3?!

18 ♗xg4 had to be played, after  
which Black has a lot of compensation  
for his pawn.

18...♗xf3 19 gxf3 ♔a6!

Not only protecting the d6-pawn,  
but also exerting pressure on the light  
squares.

20 ♔d2 ♖d5 21 ♗fb1

White has no way of pushing his  
pawns currently, so he aims for simpli-  
fications.

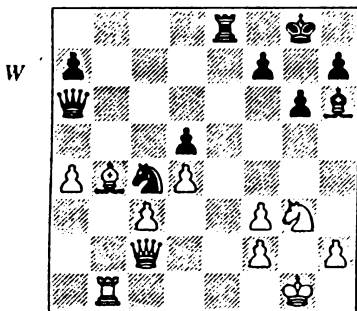
21...♗xb1+ 22 ♗xb1 ♗f8 23 ♔c2  
♖b6 24 ♗b4 d5

The pawn on c3 is so weak that it demands permanent attention, while the c4-square is a perfect transit-point for the black pieces.

25 ♖f4?

25 ♙xf8 ♜xf8 26 ♠b4 ♞c8 27 ♜g3 was better, with an unclear struggle.

25...♙h6! 26 ♜e2 ♞e8 27 ♜g3 ♜c4 (D)



Now only the queen is not superior to its counterpart. Black couldn't care less about pawns around here.

28 ♜g2 ♙g5 29 ♙c5 ♙f4 30 ♠b5 h5

The white king's position is permanently scarred, so after improving all his pieces, Black finally builds the pillars for an attack.

31 h3 ♙xg3!

Now the knight has no counterpart, and can enjoy life fully.

32 ♜xg3 ♜f6 33 ♜c1 h4+ 34 ♜g2 a6 35 ♠b7 ♜h7 36 ♞d7 ♜e6 37 ♠b7 ♜e2!

The winning move, exploiting the check on e3 to its maximum.

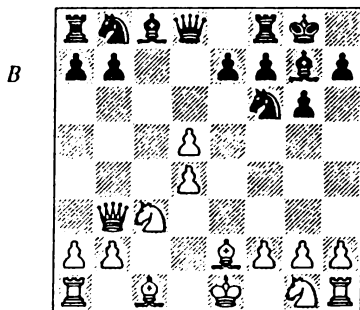
38 ♙xf7+ ♜g8 39 ♞f4

Or 39 ♜f4 ♜c3+ 40 ♜g1 ♜f1+ and Black wins.

39...♜e3+ 40 ♜g1 ♜d1 0-1

## The Theory of 5...g6

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♜f6 5 ♜c3 g6 6 ♜b3 ♙g7 7 cxd5 0-0 8 ♙e2 (D)



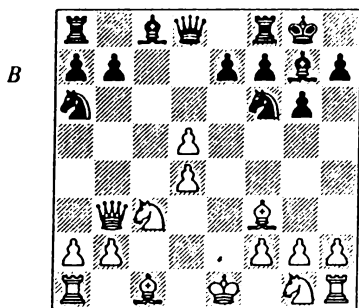
8...♜bd7

Here there are several alternatives. None of them should be feared by White, but nevertheless it's necessary to have some idea of what to do against them.

a) 8...b6 9 ♙g5 ♙b7 10 ♙xf6 exf6 (10...♙f6 is not really an alternative, since White now has the e5-square at his disposal, which he exploited to the full by 11 ♜f3 ♜a6 12 ♜e5 ♜d6 13 0-0 ♙xe5 14 dxex5 ♜xe5 15 ♙xa6 ♙xa6 16 ♞fe1 ♜d6 17 ♜a4 ♙b7 18 ♞ad1 ♞fd8 19 ♜h4 ♜f6 20 ♜xf6 exf6 21 ♞e7 with a clear advantage in Winsnes-M.S.Hansen, Gausdal 1990) 11 ♙f3 ♜a6 12 ♜ge2 ♜d6 13 0-0 ♞fd8 14 ♞ad1 f5 (14...♜c7 15 ♜e4 ♜d7 16 d6 gives White a big plus) 15 ♞fe1 ♜c7 16 ♜c1 ♞d7 (16...♜xd5?? 17 ♜xd5 ♙xd5 18 ♙xd5 ♜xd5 19 ♞c8+) 17 ♜d3 ♙xd4 (17...♜xd5 18 ♜e5 ♜xc3 19 ♜xc3 only gives White a slight pull) 18 ♜b4 ♙xc3 (18...♙f6 is maybe better) 19 ♜xc3 ♜a6 20 ♜c6

♠c8 21 ♖e3 ♠a8 22 b4 ♘xb4 (walking into White's combination; 22...♘c7 is preferable) 23 ♘e7+ ♔g7 24 ♖c3+ ♔h6 (24...f6 25 ♠e6 ♘xd5 26 ♠xd6 wins) 25 ♘xf5+! gxf5 26 ♠c6+ 1-0 Kosten-Berg, Næstved 1988.

b) 8...♘a6 9 ♙f3 (*D*) and now:



b1) 9...♖a5 10 ♘ge2 ♠d8 11 0-0 ♖b4 12 ♖d1 ♘c7 13 a3 ♖c4 14 ♘f4 (14 d6!?) 14...♘b5 15 ♘xb5 ♖xb5 16 ♠e1 ♔f8 17 a4 ♖b6 18 a5 ♖d6 19 b3 and White is better, Mainka-Schwab, Oberwart 1991.

b2) 9...♙g4 10 ♙g5 (exploiting the fact that he hasn't developed the knight yet) 10...♖d7 11 h3 ♙xf3 12 ♘xf3 b5 13 0-0 ♘c7 14 ♙xf6 exf6 15 a4 b4 16 ♖xb4 ♠fb8 17 ♖c5 ♙f8 18 ♖c6 ♖d8 19 a5 and Black has insufficient compensation for the pawn, Jo.Diaz-Schmitzer, Hessen Ch 1989.

b3) 9...♖b6 10 ♖d1 ♠d8 11 ♘ge2 ♘b4 12 d6 ♠xd6 13 ♙f4 ♠d8 14 0-0 ♘bd5 15 ♘a4 ♖b5 16 ♘ec3 ♖e8 17 ♙e5 is good for White in view of his free piece-play and Black's poor coordination, Nordsieck-Hoppe, NRW-Liga 1990/1.

b4) 9...♘c7 10 ♘ge2 ♙g4 11 ♙xg4 ♘xg4 12 ♙f4 b6 13 0-0 ♘f6 14 d6

exd6 15 d5 ♖d7 16 ♠ad1 ♠ac8 17 ♖a3 ♘ce8 18 ♘d4 with an overwhelming position for White, Berenyi-Zoister, Balatonbereny 1993.

c) 8...a5 9 ♘f3 ♘a6 10 ♙g5 and now:

c1) 10...♘c7 11 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 12 0-0 a4 13 ♘xa4 ♘xd5 14 ♙c4 ♖a5 15 ♘c5 ♘b6 16 ♙b5 ♠d8 17 a4 leaves Black a pawn down with problems developing his queenside, Hebden-Skembris, Vrnjačka Banja 1989. 17...♙xd4 18 ♠ad1 ♠d5 19 ♠xd4 ♠xc5 20 ♖d3 gives White a winning attack.

c2) After 10...♙f5 11 a3 ♘e4 12 ♙f4 ♘xc3 13 bxc3 ♙e4 14 ♖xb7 ♙xd5 15 ♖b2 Black again has insufficient compensation for the pawn, Hebden-Trzaska, Hastings 1995/6.

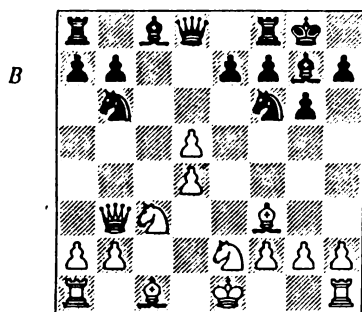
d) 8...e6?! is an over-optimistic pawn sacrifice. After 9 dxe6 ♙xe6 10 ♖xb7 ♖a5 11 b4 ♖b6 12 ♙f3 ♘a6 13 ♖xb6 axb6 14 ♙xa8 ♘xb4 15 ♙f3 ♘c2+ 16 ♔d2 ♘xa1 17 ♙b2 White won in Zeller-Rabl, Württemberg Ch 1991.

e) 8...♖b6 9 ♖xb6 axb6 10 ♘f3 ♠d8 11 ♙c4 ♘a6 12 0-0 ♘b4 13 d6 exd6 14 ♙g5 d5 15 ♙b3 and here the white pieces are better organized, and the black pawns are potentially weak, besides the immediate problems with the protection of the d5-pawn, Smejkal-Beikert, Viernheim 1995.

f) With 8...♘e8 Black doesn't even try to win back his pawn, but establishes a solid blockade. Since this can never be sufficient in the long run, this move is not to be taken seriously, but still it's no worse than, for example 8...b6. It's just more obvious that it's silly! After 9 ♙e3 ♘d7 10 ♙f3 ♘b6 11 ♘ge2 ♘d6 12 ♠d1 a6 13 0-0 ♘bc4

14 ♖f4 White was substantially better in Erlbeck-Hepting, Mittelfranken Ch 1995.

9 ♖f3 ♘b6 10 ♗ge2 (D)



Here Black has two main continuations, between which the choice is a matter of taste. 10...♖g4 is more solid, but 10...♖f5 offers a more unbalanced game. Both lines are overall to be considered slightly more comfortable for White.

A: 10...♖g4 80

B: 10...♖f5 81

Or 10...a5!?. and now:

a) 11 0-0 (White chooses not to worry about his queen's safety) 11...a4 12 ♗b5 ♖d7 13 ♗b4 ♕e8 14 d6 ♖f8 15 ♖d1 exd6 16 d5 (White has a positional plus) 16...♖f5 17 ♖g5 ♘bd7 18 ♗h4 ♖e7 19 ♗g3 (Black is punished for the lack of coordination between his pieces) 19...♗e5 20 ♗xf5 ♗xf3+ 21 gx3! gxf5 22 ♖e1! a3 (there is nothing else) 23 ♖xe7 axb2 24 ♖b1 ♖xe7 25 ♖xf6 ♗a5 26 ♗h6 1-0 Hazai-Lenart, Hungary 1994.

b) 11 a4 is similar to the main line, except for the interpolation of a4 and ...a5. Yet this seems to be an advantage

for White, as he can use the b5-square better than Black can exploit b4:

b1) 11...♖g4 12 ♖xg4 ♗xg4 13 ♖f4 ♗f6 14 d6 exd6 15 0-0 ♕e8 16 ♖ad1 ♖c8 17 ♗b5 ♖c4 18 ♖g5 h6 19 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 20 b3 ♖b4 21 ♗xa5 ♖xb3 22 ♖b1 gives White a very obvious advantage, Dolmatov-O' Cinneide, Bern 1994.

b2) 11...♗d6!? 12 ♘b5 ♗b4+ 13 ♗xb4 axb4 14 d6 exd6 15 b3 (establishing b4 as a permanent weakness) 15...♖e6 16 ♗c7 ♖ab8 17 ♗xe6 fxe6 18 ♖d2 ♘bd5 19 0-0 ♗f7 20 ♖fc1 ♖fc8 21 g4! (Dolmatov exploits the weakness in Black's very delicate defensive chain: too many pieces are protecting each other) 21...♗c3 22 ♗xc3 bxc3 23 ♖xc3 ♖xc3 24 ♖xc3 ♘d5 25 ♖xd5 exd5 26 ♖d1 and White is a healthy pawn up, Dolmatov-Halldorsson, Reykjavik 1988.

A)

10...♖g4 11 ♖xg4 ♗xg4 12 ♖f4 ♗d7!?

12...♗f6 13 d6 exd6 14 0-0 (14 h3! to keep the bishop on the diagonal is the right move, but still untested in practice) 14...♗d7? (on the preferable 14...♗h5! 15 ♖e3 d5 Black is so close to equality that any talk about a real advantage is in vain) 15 ♘b5! ♖fe8 16 ♗ec3 ♗c8 17 ♖g5! a6? (17...♗e7 is necessary) 18 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 19 ♗d5 ♖d8 20 ♗bc7! 1-0 Vujčić-Tringov, Belgrade 1988.

13 a4 ♖ad8 14 d6 exd6 15 a5 ♗c8 16 0-0 ♖fe8 17 ♖a4!?

An interesting plan. White transfers the rook to the fourth rank, to exert pressure on b7.

17...d5?!

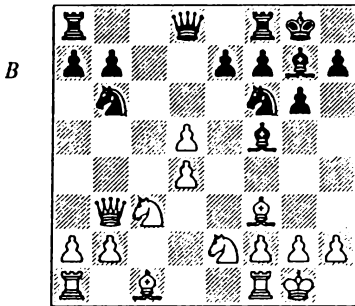
Stoica suggests 17...b5!? 18 axb6 (18 ♖b4 a6 19 h3 ♟f6 20 d5 appears to give White a little something, but Black can exploit the rook's bad position through a brilliant combination: 20...♞c7 21 ♞d4 ♞e7 22 ♖a1 ♞fxd5! 23 ♞xd5 ♞xd5 24 ♞xd5 ♞c5!! and Black wins material) 18...♞xb6 19 ♖a5 ♖c8 (19...♖b8 20 ♖b5 is preferable for White) 20 ♖fa1 ♖c7 with a complicated game ahead.

18 ♖b4 b6 19 ♖b5 ♞c6 20 a6!

White has the advantage, Stoica-Suciu, Romania 1994 – see p. 73. a7 is a permanent problem for Black.

B)

10...♙f5 11 0-0 (D)



11...♞d7

11...a5 12 a4 (12 ♙f4 ♙d3 13 d6 exd6 14 ♞d1 ♙a6 15 b3 h6 16 h3 ♞h7 17 g3 ♖c8 18 ♙g2 ♖e8 19 ♖e1 ♟f6 20 ♖c1 ♞d7 21 ♞d2 ♞h7 22 ♙e3 led to a small advantage for White in Dolmatov-Adams, Hastings 1989/90 – see p. 72) 12...♞d6 13 ♞b5 ♞d7 14 d6 exd6 15 ♙f4 ♙e6 16 ♞d1 ♞e8 17 d5 ♙g4 18 ♞ec3 gave White the advantage in Van Baarle-Gaprinidashvili, Amsterdam 1976.

11...♙d3 is premature. The bishop is poorly placed after 12 d6! exd6 (12...♞xd6? 13 ♙xb7 ♖ad8 14 ♖d1 ♙c4 15 ♞c2 doesn't offer Black a lot for the pawn, Manyai-Wozny, Zalakaros 1991):

a) 13 ♙xb7!? is the chance for people who love grabbing the b7-pawn. Even though this move seems to be justifiable, Black gets a lot of play, and Black's 11...♙d3 now makes some sense. 13...♖b8 14 ♙f3 and now:

a1) 14...♖e8 15 ♞d1 ♙a6 16 ♖e1 ♖c8 17 ♞g3 left Black with very little for the pawn in Hort-Dolmatov, Amsterdam 1980.

a2) 14...♞d7 15 ♞d1 ♙a6 16 b3 ♖fe8 17 ♖e1 ♖bc8 18 ♙f4! (almost always the right square in this variation) 18...d5 19 ♖c1 ♞e4 20 g3 g5 21 ♙xe4 gxf4 22 ♙d3 ♙xd3 23 ♞xd3 fxf3 24 hxg3 White went on to win in Merklinger-Merkel, Verbandsliga Süd-Baden 1993. I don't know how much I trust this variation. Even though White got away with it here, Black has a good score when White grabs the b7-pawn after ...exd6.

b) 13 ♙f4 ♖e8 14 ♖fe1 d5 15 ♞g3 ♞d7 16 ♙e5 ♙c4 17 ♞c2 leaves White clearly better. The bishop on c4 is clearly a problem for Black. In what follows it ends up on a6 and prevents him from defending against a4-a5 undermining the defence of d5. 17...♞g4 18 ♙xg7 ♞xg7 19 ♞d2 h6 20 b3 ♙a6 21 ♙xg4 ♞xg4 22 a4 ♖ad8 (22...♖xe1+ 23 ♖xe1 ♖d8 24 a5 ♞c8 25 ♖e5 also leaves Black in difficulties) 23 ♖xe8 ♖xe8 24 a5 ♞d7 25 ♞xd5 and White went on to win in Orlov-Malofeev, St Petersburg 1997.

12 a4

12 ♖d1 ♜fd8 13 d6 exd6 14 a4 ♜ab8  
 15 a5 ♜c8 16 ♜a4!? ♜e7 17 h3 b5 18  
 ♜b4 a6 19 d5 ♜c7 20 ♜d4 ♜bc8 21  
 g4 ♙d7 22 ♙f4 leaves White slightly  
 better, although he has problems with  
 the rook on b4, Kontorovich-Rogers,  
 Canberra 1996. Still the space advan-  
 tage is more important.

12...♙d3

12...♜fd8 is answered strongly by  
 13 d6!.

13 d6 ♙c4

13...exd6 14 a5 ♙c4 15 ♜b4 ♙xe2  
 16 ♜xe2 ♜bd5 17 ♜b3 ♜fe8 18 ♜c3  
 ♜xc3 19 bxc3 d5 20 ♜b1 leaves Black  
 with nothing else but the right to de-  
 fend, Sziva-Franke, NRW-Liga 1994/5.

14 ♜b4 ♙xe2?!

14...♜xd6 15 ♜xd6 exd6 16 ♙xb7  
 ♜ab8 is better, but I doubt that Black  
 has enough now the queens have left  
 the board.

15 ♜xe2 ♜bd5 16 ♜a3 exd6

16...♜xd6 17 ♜xd6 exd6 18 ♙d2  
 gives White a light-squared dominance  
 in the endgame. Nevertheless, it was  
 Black's best try.

17 ♜b3!

White clearly has control. His two  
 bishops offer him the better chances in  
 the forthcoming struggle.

17...♜fe8 18 ♜e1 ♜e7 19 ♜xb7  
 ♜xb7 20 ♙xb7 ♜ab8 21 ♙a6 ♜f5 22  
 ♜d1 ♜d5 23 ♙c4 ♜b4

23...♜b4 24 ♜f1 ♜c2 25 ♜a2  
 ♜cxd4 26 ♜xd4 ♜xd4 27 ♙e3 gives  
 White a big plus.

24 ♙xd5 ♜xe2 25 ♜f1 ♜e8 26 b3!  
 ♙xd4?

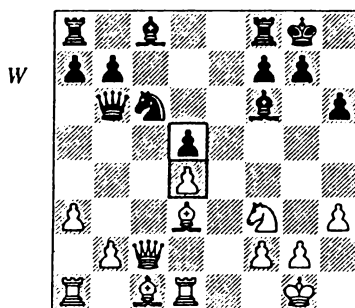
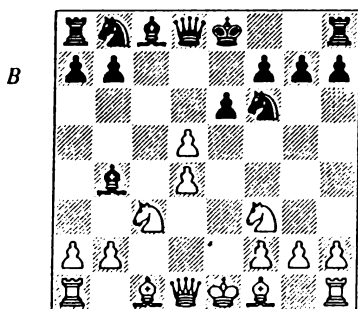
26...♜xd4 27 ♜xd4 ♙xd4 28 ♜b1  
 would not have been nice for Black, but  
 still he would have had some chances  
 to defend.

27 ♙a3 ♜bb8 28 ♜ac1 ♙b6 29 g4

White went on win in Milos-Chris-  
 tiansen, Szirak IZ 1987.

# 6 5...e6 6 ♘f3 ♙b4 7 cxd5

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♘f6  
5 ♘c3 e6 6 ♘f3 ♙b4 7 cxd5 (D)



Ochsner – P.H. Nielsen  
*Danish Ch (Esbjerg) 1997*

This chapter will not have as large a practical section as most of the other chapters, mainly because there are few positions here that are alike, and the ones that are, have been covered in the Introduction. There is one kind of position that often occurs from the variations after 7 cxd5 – the symmetrical structure arising when White exchanges knights on d5, and Black recaptures with the e-pawn. The next diagram is an example (D):

The position is equal. Black has good pressure against d4, but on the other hand d5 is not protected at all. White now played ambitiously.

15 ♙e3 ♙e6 16 ♚d2 ♘e7!

A good manoeuvre: Black wants to gain the bishop-pair by ...♘f5xe3.

17 ♚ac1

17 ♙f4 with the idea 18 ♙e5 was better. Now Black gets the two bishops,

after which there will always be a small advantage for him.

17...♘f5 18 ♙xf5 ♙xf5 19 ♚c5 ♙e6 20 ♙f4

As often happens when you lose something (here the two bishops), you get some activity. The white position is solid enough, and he should now exchange all the major pieces, since he will have problems defending both flanks against the two bishops.

20...♚fc8 21 ♚dc1 ♚xc5 22 ♚xc5 ♚c8 23 ♚xc8+ ♙xc8 24 ♙e5 ♙e7 25 ♚c3 ♙f5 26 ♙c7 ♚b5 27 ♙f4 g5 28 ♙b8 a6 29 ♚c7 ♚d7

Now by keeping the queens on the board, White would have retained the excellent team of queen and knight. A draw would be a likely outcome.

Instead by 30 ♚xd7? White gave his opponent real winning chances. Although White probably should hold

the draw, Black is a good deal better and actually went on to win.

## The Theory of 5...e6 6 ♟f3 ♘b4 7 cxd5

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♞f6  
5 ♞c3 e6 6 ♞f3 ♘b4 7 cxd5 ♞xd5

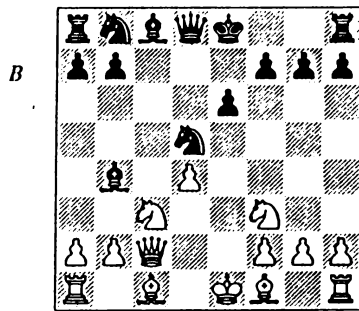
7...exd5 is not so good. White's best is 8 ♘b5+! ♙d7 9 ♚e2+ ♞c4 (9...♚e7 10 ♞e5 ♞e4 11 ♞xd7 ♞xc3 12 ♞f6+ ♜d8 13 ♚xe7+ ♜xe7 14 ♙d2 ♜xf6 15 bxc3 gave White better prospects in Prokopchuk-Neumann, Dresden 1993; 9...♙e7 10 ♞e5 0-0 11 0-0 a6 12 ♙xd7 ♞bxd7 13 ♚f3 is also better for White, Doghri-Vadasz, Budapest 1996) 10 ♞d2 0-0 (10...♙xc3 11 bxc3 ♙xb5 12 ♚xb5+ ♞d7 13 ♞xe4 dxe4 14 ♚xb7 0-0 15 0-0 and White was a pawn up and went on to win in Shvidler-Haba, Kecskemet 1993) 11 ♞dxe4 dxe4 12 0-0 ♙xc3 13 bxc3 ♚e8 14 ♚b1 a6 15 ♙xd7 ♚xd7 16 ♚b6! ♚c7 17 ♚b2 ♚a7 18 d5, which was terrible for Black in Ashley-Vadasz, Budapest 1997.

Now:

A: 8 ♚c2 84  
B: 8 ♙d2 86

Instead 8 ♚b3 is an old line, which is not considered dangerous today. 8...♞c6 9 ♙d3 ♚b6! (the simplest equalizing method) 10 ♙d2 (10 0-0 loses a pawn to 10...♙xc3 11 bxc3 ♚xb3 12 axb3 ♞xc3) 10...♙a5 11 0-0 ♚xb3 12 axb3 ♙b6 with equal chances, J.Polgar-Smyslov, Aruba 1992.

A)  
8 ♚c2 (D)



This is quite popular nowadays, but I have my doubts about White's chances of gaining an advantage.

Now:

A1: 8...♞d7 84  
A2: 8...♞c6 85

Others can be dealt with briefly:

a) 8...♙e7 9 a3 ♞d7 10 ♞xd5 exd5 11 ♙d3 ♞f6 12 0-0 0-0 13 ♚e1 h6 14 ♙f4 is good for White, Suba-Smagin, Moscow 1986.

b) 8...♚c7 9 ♙d2 ♞d7 10 ♚c1 ♙xc3 11 bxc3 0-0 12 ♙d3, Holzke-Lorincz, Budapest 1993. This is similar to the typical positions investigated in Chapter 8, where White normally is a little better.

c) 8...0-0 9 ♙d3 h6 10 0-0 ♙e7 11 ♚e2 ♞d7 12 ♞xd5 exd5 13 ♞e5 ♙f6 14 f4 ♚b6 15 ♙e3 was a little better for White in Sveshnikov-Dolmatov, Erevan 1982.

A1)

8...♞d7 9 ♙d3 ♞f6  
9...♚c7 10 0-0 ♙xc3 11 bxc3 ♚xc3 12 ♚b1! ♚b4 13 ♙xh7 secured White an advantage in Malaniuk-Vlassov, St Petersburg 1994.

10 0-0 0-0

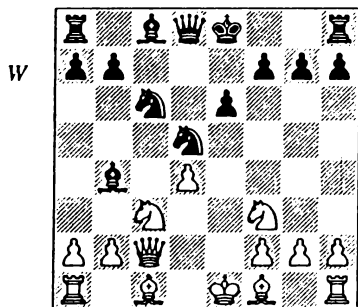
10...♙c7 11 ♙g5 ♘b4 12 ♙b5+ ♙d7 13 ♙xd7+ ♘xd7 14 ♖b3 ♘b6 15 ♙xe7 ♖xe7 16 a3 ♘d4 17 ♘xd5 ♘xd5 18 ♜f1 gives Black problems completing his development, Kharlov-Gutov, Russia 1997.

11 ♘xd5 exd5 12 ♙g5 h6 13 ♙h4 ♙e7 14 ♜f1 ♙e6 15 ♙f5

White has emerged from the opening with an advantage, but Black's debacle in C.Bauer-J.Petrov, Vejen U-18 Ech 1993 was unnecessary: 15...♙b4? 16 ♜xe6! fxe6 17 ♙xe6+ ♖h8 18 ♘e5 g5 19 ♖g6 ♘h7 20 ♖xh6 ♜f6 21 ♙xg5 ♜xh6 22 ♘f7+ ♖g7 23 ♙xh6+ 1-0.

A2)

8...♘c6 (D)



Now:

A21: 9 ♙e2 85

A22: 9 ♙d3 85

Instead:

a) 9 a3 ♙a5 10 b4 ♙b6 11 ♙b2 (developing the queenside first seems careless) 11...a5 12 ♘xd5 exd5 13 b5 ♘e7 14 ♙d3 ♙g4 15 ♘e5 ♜c8 16 ♖b1 ♙h5 17 0-0 f6 18 ♘f3 ♙xf3 19 gxf3 ♖d6 20 ♜e1 ♖f7 and Black is

already much better, Miles-Djurić, San Francisco 1987.

b) 9 ♙c4 seems to lack any real idea. 9...♘b6! 10 ♙b3? (10 ♙b5 is better, but not good) 10...♘xd4 11 ♘xd4 ♖xd4 12 0-0 ♙d7 13 ♙e3 ♖g4 14 ♜ad1 ♖g6 15 ♖e2 ♙c6 16 f3 ♙xc3 17 bxc3 0-0 and White has insufficient compensation, if any at all, Martorelli-Zelčić, Saint Vincent 1998.

A21)

9 ♙e2

This is for some reason very popular these days, but Black should not experience any difficulties if he is careful.

9...0-0 10 0-0 ♙e7 11 ♜d1 ♙f6 12 ♖e4

12 ♘c4 h6 13 ♘xf6+ ♖xf6 14 ♖e4 ♖f5! 15 ♖h4 ♖f6 equalized in Renet-Lobron, Uzes tt 1990.

12...♘c7 13 ♙d3 g6 14 ♙h6 ♜e8 15 h4

It seems that White has some initiative, but his pieces are worse placed than in the games in the Introduction, so Black has time to find a good defence.

15...♙d7 16 ♙g5 ♙c6 17 ♖g4 ♘f5

The knights love to be here.

18 ♘e4 h6 19 ♘xf6+ ♘xf6 20 ♙xf6 ♖xf6

Play is equal, Adams-Magem, Debrecen Echt 1992.

A22)

9 ♙d3

An interesting pawn sacrifice, but not necessarily a good one.

9...♙a5!

The critical test. After 9...♙e7 10 a3 ♙f6 11 0-0 ♘de7 12 ♙e3 h6 13

♠ad1 0-0 14 ♗d2 ♙d7 15 ♙b1 ♠c8  
16 ♗d3 ♗g6 17 ♗e4 ♙e7 18 b4  
White perhaps has a slight advantage,  
Topalov-Gulko, Moscow OL 1994.

10 a3

10 0-0 ♗db4 11 ♗c2 ♗xd3 12  
♗xd3 h6 13 ♠d1 0-0 14 ♗e4 ♙xc3 15  
bxc3 ♗d5 16 ♗d3 ♠d8 is preferable  
for Black, Plaskett-Smagin, Belgrade  
1988.

10...♗xc3 11 bxc3 ♗xd4 12 ♗xd4  
♗xd4 13 ♙b5+

13 0-0? ♗e5 14 ♙d2 ♙c7 does not  
provide any compensation, Subašić-  
Groszpeter, Zenica 1987. White does  
not have to hurry castling anyway.

13...♙d7

13...♗e7 14 0-0 ♗c5 15 a4 ♙b6 16  
♙a3+ ♙c5 17 ♗e2 ♗c7 18 ♗g4 ♗f8  
and Black survived in Kotronias-Kour-  
kounakis, Athens Cup 1996.

14 0-0 ♗d5

14...♗e5? 15 ♙xd7+ ♗xd7 16 ♗a4+  
♗c7 17 ♙f4 gives White a flowing  
initiative, Mi.Pavlović-Piankov, Lin-  
ares 1997.

15 c4 ♗f5

15...♗h5?? loses a piece to 16 ♗a4  
♙xb5 17 ♗xa5.

16 ♙xd7+ ♗xd7 17 ♗d1+

17 ♗a4+ ♗e7 18 c5 b6! (I have  
talked to the white player in this game,  
and his analysis, which he did not  
show me, suggests that the position is  
equal, but that it is White who has to be  
careful not to be worse) 19 ♙f4 (19 ♙c3  
♠hd8 seems safe enough) 19...bxc5  
20 ♠ad1 ♙b6! 21 ♙d6+ ♗f6 22 ♗c4  
h5 23 ♠fe1 ♠ad8 24 ♠d3 ♗g6 and  
Black's position is preferable, S.B.Han-  
sen-P.Schlösser, Lippstadt 1997.

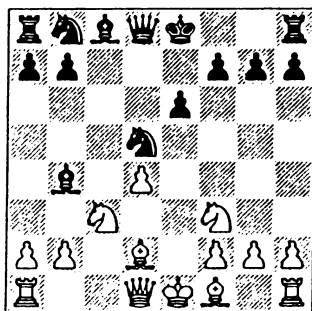
17...♗e7 18 ♠b1 b6 19 ♗e2 ♠hd8  
20 ♠b3 ♠ac8

Black has better prospects due to his  
extra pawn. After 21 ♠g3 ♗f8 22 ♙b2  
f6 23 ♠f3 ♠d2 White is already lost,  
Mi.Pavlović-Tukmakov, Biel 1997.

B)

8 ♙d2 (D)

B



8...♙c6

8...0-0 9 ♙d3 b6!? 10 0-0 ♙b7 11  
♗xd5 ♙xd2 12 ♗xd2 ♙xd5 13 ♗e5  
½-½ Sariego-Pecorelli, Cuba 1993. I  
suspect this was a prearranged draw,  
but the chances are even.

9 ♙d3

9 ♙b5 looks like a beginner's  
move, and does not pose Black any  
problems: 9...0-0 10 0-0 ♙e7 11 ♠c1  
♗cb4 12 ♗xd5?! (I do not understand  
why White should help Black reorga-  
nize his pieces) 12...♗xd5 13 ♗e2  
♙d7 14 ♙d3 ♗b6 15 ♗e5 ♠ad8 16  
♙c3 ♙f6 and Black is already a good  
deal better, Vucković-Lobron, Wies-  
baden 1993.

9 ♙c4 ♗f6 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♙g5 ♙e7  
12 a3 a6 13 ♠c1 b5 14 ♙a2 ♙b7 must  
be even, Zso.Polgar-Kosashvili, Rishon  
le Zion 1996. This position is interest-  
ing, and only the fact that White  
placed the rook on c1 irritates.

9...♙e7

9...♘f6 10 a3 ♙e7 11 ♙g5 0-0 12 ♙c2 ♚b6 13 0-0 ♘d8 (13...♚xb2 14 ♚d3! g6 15 ♚fb1 wins) 14 ♚c2 h6 15 ♙e3 ♘g4 16 ♚ad1 gives White good chances of creating an attack, Christiansen-Hulak, Surakarta/Denpasar 1982.

9...h6!? is a different plan. I do not completely trust it, but in practice it has turned out fine, e.g. 10 0-0 0-0 11 a3 ♙a5 12 ♙b1 ♙b6 13 ♚c2 f5 14 ♙a2 ♘cc7 and Black is pretending to be OK, and maybe he is right, Totsky-Brodsky, Kstovo 1994.

9...b6?! 10 ♚a4 ♙xc3 11 bxc3 ♙d7 12 ♚c2 h6 13 a3 0-0 14 c4 leaves Black disorganized, and White with a clear edge, Brunner-Kiefhaber, Budapest 1989.

10 0-0

10 ♘xd5 exd5 11 h3 ♙f6 12 0-0-0 13 ♙c3 ♙e6 14 ♚e1 ♚d7 with even chances, Onishchuk-Adams, Lucerne Wcht 1997.

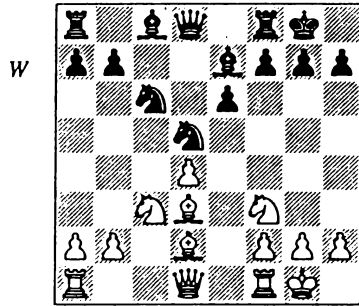
10 ♚e2!? 0-0 11 ♚d1 ♘f6 12 0-0 ♘b4 13 ♙b1 ♙d7 14 ♘e5 ♚c8 15 ♚fe1 ♘bd5 16 ♚f3 ♙c6 17 ♚h3 with ideal position for White, Suba-L.Spassov, L'Hospitalet 1994. Still, further tests are needed to verify whether this is a good plan.

10...0-0 (D)

10...♘db4!? might be another way to equalize. After 11 ♙b5 a6 12 ♙xc6+ ♘xc6 13 ♙f4 ♘b4 14 ♚b3 0-0 15 a3 ♘d5 16 ♘xd5 ♚xd5 17 ♚xd5 exd5 18 ♚ac1 ♙d8 19 ♙c7 ♙f6 20 ♙e5 ♙d8 Black does not seem to be worse, Vratonjić-Papaioannou, Aegina 1995.

11 ♚e2

White has tried a large number of alternatives:



W

a) 11 a3!? ♘xc3 12 ♙xc3 (12 bxc3 b6 13 ♚e1 ♙b7 14 h4! gives White good attacking chances, as shown in the Chapter 10) 12...♙f6 13 ♘e5 ♘e7 14 ♚f3 ♘d5 15 ♙e4 a5 was fine for Black in J.Polgar-Karpov, Monaco blindfold 1993.

b) 11 ♚c2?! ♘db4 12 ♙xh7+ ♘h8 13 ♚b1 ♘xd4 is fine for Black. White's development is hardly excessive.

c) 11 ♚c1 is a fairly new pawn sacrifice, but probably it will not be around for long. After 11...♘db4 12 ♙b1 ♘xd4 13 ♘xd4 ♚xd4 14 ♘b5 ♚f6 (also very safe is 14...♚d8 15 ♘c7 ♚b8 16 ♚e2 ♘d5 17 ♚fd1 ♙d6 18 ♘b5 b6 19 ♘xa7 ♚f6 20 ♘xc8 ♚xc8 21 ♚xc8+ ♚xc8 22 ♚c1 ♚d8 with equal play, Rechlis-Agdestein, Jerusalem 1986) 15 ♚c3 e5 16 ♘c7 ♚b8 17 ♚g3 ♚c6 18 ♚h5 g6 19 ♚c1 ♚d6 White has some initiative, but I doubt that it is sufficient, Onishchuk-Polak, Vienna 1996.

d) 11 ♙e4?! ♘f6 12 ♙xc6 bxc6 13 ♙g5 ♙b7 14 ♘a4 c5! 15 ♘xc5 ♙xf3 16 ♚xf3 ♚xd4 17 ♘e4 ♚xb2 and Black is already close to winning, K.Müller-Lobron, Bundesliga 1993/4.

e) 11 ♙e3?! ♘xe3 (when Black has not weakened himself, this is quite

safe) 12 fxe3 b6 13 ♖c4 ♗b7 14 ♖c5 ♗e8 15 ♗h5 g6 16 ♗f3 ♜c8 17 ♖xc6 ♗xc6 18 ♜ac1 f5 and Black is already a little better, O.Rodriguez-Magem, Spanish Cht 1994.

f) 11 ♖e4 ♗b6 12 ♖c3 (the bishop is horrible here, but still b2 has to be defended) 12...♗d7 13 ♗d2 ♜fd8 14 ♜ad1 ♜ac8 15 ♜fe1 ♗e8 and Black was better all the way to the draw in B.Kristensen-P.H.Nielsen, Danish Ch (Esbjerg) 1997.

g) 11 ♖xd5 (not very ambitious) 11...exd5 12 ♗b3 ♗f6 13 ♜fe1 ♗d6 14 ♜ac1 ♜d8 15 h3 g6 16 ♗e3 b6 17 ♗b5 ♖a5 is dead equal, Sermek-Berg, Luxembourg 1993.

h) 11 ♜c1!? ♖f6 (11...♖db4 12 ♗f4 ♖xd3 13 ♗xd3 might give White some chance of getting a positional advantage, due to his better development and the threat of d4-d5, e.g. 13...♖b4 14 ♗e4 ♗d7 15 d5 is better for White) 12 ♗g5 b6 13 a3 ♗b7 14 ♗c2 g6 15 ♗d3 ♖d5 16 ♗h6 (16 h4 is better) 16...♜e8 and now 17 ♗b3 gave White a slight advantage in Fcher-Ellers, Balatonbereny 1995.

11...♖f6

11...♗f6 12 ♗e4 g6 13 ♗h6 ♜e8 14 ♖c5 ♖de7 is totally fine for Black, Vajda-Nisipeanu, Budapest 1996.

11...♖db4 looks dangerous, but with only one game available it is hard to come to any clear conclusions. 12 ♗e4 ♖xd4 13 ♖xd4 ♗xd4 14 ♗e3 ♗e5 15 ♗f3 a5 (Black's main problem is that he has no easy way to develop) 16 ♜ad1 ♖c6 17 ♜fe1 ♗f6 18 ♗h5 h6 19 ♗b5 ♗b4 20 ♗b1 ♗e5 21 ♗d3 ♗f5 22 ♗e2 ♗e5 23 f4 ♗b8 24 a3 ♗c7 25 ♖a4 ♗c7 26 ♗c2 g6 27 f5 exf5 28 ♖b6 ♗c6 29 ♖xa8 ♜xa8 30 ♗xh6 Yudasin-Yuldachev, Erevan OL 1996. White is preferable, though the game ended in a draw.

12 ♗e3

12 ♖e4 is covered in the two Kamsky-Karpov games in the Introduction.

12...♖b4 13 ♗c4

13 ♗b1 b6 is OK for Black as well.

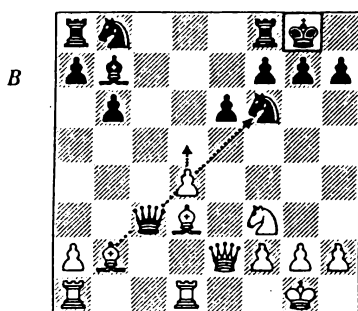
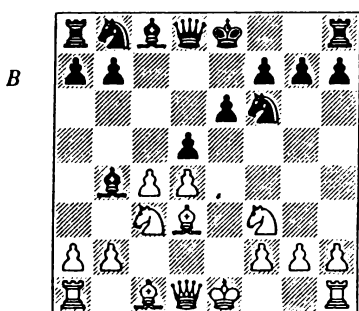
13...a6 14 a3 ♖bd5 15 ♖e5 ♗d7 16 ♗d2 ♜c8 17 ♜fe1 ♗c6

Black is fine, Sermek-Gerber, Cannes 1995.

# 7 7 ♖d3: Introduction and Unusual 9th Moves

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♘f6  
5 ♘c3 e6 6 ♘f3 ♖b4 7 ♖d3 (D)

way to winning the World Championship.



I have no doubt whatsoever that the 6...♖b4 line is Black's most reliable reply to the Panov-Botvinnik Attack. There is no easy way for White to develop an initiative.

This chapter discusses alternatives to the main lines, which are dealt with in the next two chapters. There are two kind of positions from this chapter that are worth discussing: firstly positions where Black tries to grab a pawn on c3 (which is also possible in the 9...b6 line) and secondly the traditional IQP positions, arising after 9...♘c6, but these are to be found in the introduction to this book.

Let's now take a look at a rather famous game from the 1980s, where Kasparov met some problems on the

**Beliavsky – Kasparov**  
*Moscow Ct (4) 1983*

14...♚c7?!

Later Black improved with 14...♚c6, which gives him better chances of resisting White's initiative.

15 d5!!

A beautiful move, opening a line for the b2-bishop. If Black had time to blockade d5, the bishop would prove misplaced on b2, and the compensation for the pawn would be insufficient.

15...♖xd5

This seems forced. 15...♘xd5 leaves the king without protection. White has a very strong attack after 16 ♘g5 g6 (16...h6 is worse, as 17 ♚h5! probably leaves Black defenceless: 17...♚f4 18 ♚xh6!! with mate soon to follow;

17...♠d8 18 ♔h7+! ♚f8 (18...♚h8 19 ♜xh6 leaves Black without defence) 19 ♔a3+ ♚e8 20 ♝xe6 with a winning attack, besides the material gains; 17...♝c3 18 ♔h7+ ♚h8 19 ♔e4! and Black is lost, since he is so badly placed that he cannot avoid losing a piece) 17 ♝xh7! ♠c8 18 ♜g4. If Black can survive this is very doubtful.

16 ♔xf6 gxf6 17 ♜e3

The black king's position has been seriously weakened and he is behind in development. Still, it is not obvious that White has sufficient compensation.

17...♚g7 18 ♠ac1 ♝c6 19 ♔e4!

Forcing further weaknesses in the black camp.

19...♜d6

The queen was misplaced and had to move. After 19...♔e4 20 ♜xe4 ♠ac8 21 ♝d4 Black loses a piece and the game.

20 ♔xd5 exd5 21 ♠c4!

Now the king comes under attack. It is forceful moves like this that are needed to make a two-pawn investment pay off.

21...♜d7!

Black is forced to prevent the check on g4. The variation 21...♠ae8 22 ♠g4+ ♚h8 23 ♜h6 ♠g8 24 ♠xd5!! ♜e6 25 ♜xh7+! ♚xh7 26 ♠h5# illustrates why.

22 ♠h4 ♜f5 23 ♠xd5!

Not very difficult tactics, but still beautiful.

23...♝e5 24 h3

All White's pieces are well placed, and he has to do something about his back-rank problems. It's true prophylaxis at its simplest.

24...♠fe8 25 ♝d4

The knight belongs on the f5-square.

25...♜g6 26 ♜f4 ♠ad8 27 ♝f5+ ♚h8 28 ♠xd8 ♠xd8 29 ♜e4

White no longer has the initiative, but as so often the advantage has just changed its character. Black is left with permanent weaknesses around his king, and a knight that will have trouble finding a really good square. Also the queen might in some lines get in trouble. Black has an extra pawn, but it is not apparent how he should make any use of it. If he moves the queenside pawns they will just be lost.

29...♠c8 30 ♚h2 ♠c4?

Black loses his nerve after a good defence. After 30...♠d8 it was still up to White to find some ways to attack. The trick behind it is 31 f4?! ♝f3+!, when Black is still in the game.

31 ♜a8+ ♜g8 32 ♜xa7 ♠xh4 33 ♝xh4

After these exchanges the two main factors in the position are the position of the queens and the weaknesses of the pawns. On both counts White is clearly better. The position must be considered winning for White.

33...♜g5 34 ♜a8+ ♚g7 35 ♜e4 h5?

The final mistake, but also after 35...♚g8 36 ♝f5 ♝g6 37 g3 it would be impossible to defend the black position. 37...♜d2 38 ♜a8+ ♝f8 39 ♚g2 leaves White in total control, even though he still has some work ahead of him.

36 ♝f5+ ♚g6 37 ♝e7+ ♚h6 38 f4 1-0

The important lesson from this game is the same as in the main line in

the theoretical section: White must use the initiative vigorously, and not let the power of his attack fade out, while Black has to be very careful to avoid losing on almost every move. Normally the chances must be evaluated as being preferable for White in practice, since it is easier to attack than it is to defend. Also I have not seen any games where Black proves that it is safe to take the pawn.

## The Theory of 7 ♘d3

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♟f6  
5 ♟c3 e6 6 ♟f3 ♘b4 7 ♘d3 dxc4

Black has also tried other moves. Here are two important examples which do not end with a transposition to the main line:

a) 7...0-0 8 cxd5 exd5 9 0-0 ♘g4  
10 h3 ♘h5 11 ♘g5 ♘xc3 12 bxc3  
♟bd7 13 c4 dxc4 14 ♘xc4 ♟b6 15  
♘b3 gave White an edge in the game  
S.B.Hansen-Kumaran, Copenhagen  
1996.

b) 7...♟c6 8 0-0 ♘e7 9 a3 0-0 10  
♞e1 b6 11 cxd5 ♟xd5 12 ♟xd5 ♞xd5  
13 ♘e4 ♞d6 14 ♟e5 ♘b7 15 ♘f4 ♘f6  
16 ♟g6 gave White a winning position  
in Berndt-Tomann, Berlin 1996.

8 ♘xc4 0-0

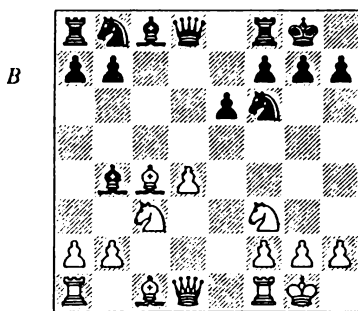
8...♟d5 9 ♞d3 ♟c6 10 0-0 ♟b6 11  
♘b3 0-0 12 ♘c2 g6 13 a3 ♘e7 14  
♘h6 ♞e8 15 ♞ad1 ♟d5 16 ♞fe1 ♘d7  
17 ♟e4 ♟f6 18 h4 ♞c8 19 ♟xf6+  
♘xf6 20 h5 gave White a fantastic  
attacking position in Nixon-Sejdini,  
Redcar 1995.

9 0-0 (D)

Now:

A: 9...♘d7!? 91

B: 9...♟bd7 92



Or:

a) 9...♟c6 is a perfectly reasonable alternative to the main lines, and should not be underestimated. 10 ♘g5 ♘e7 11 ♞e1 ♘d7 12 a3 ♞c8 13 ♞d3 ♟d5 14 ♘xe7 (14 h4!? is an interesting option) 14...♟dx7 15 ♞ad1 with an interesting position, Tal-Ljubojević, Manila IZ 1990. In the game White rushed with d4-d5 and forced drawish simplifications. Preferable was the aggressive set-up with ♘a2-b1.

b) 9...♘xc3 10 bxc3 ♞c7 11 ♘d3!  
♟bd7 (11...♞xc3! 12 ♘g5 ♟bd7 transposes to Line B) 12 c4 b6 13 ♘b2 looks fairly normal, but White has developed the bishop to b2, which is not possible in the standard lines after any other move than 9...♘xc3. Then the straightforward 13...♘b7 14 ♞e1 ♞fe8 15 ♞e3!? ♞ad8 16 h3 h6 17 ♞c1 ♟h5 18 ♘b1 ♟f4 19 ♞c2 ♟g6 20 ♞ce1 gave White a very promising position in Lesiège-Peptan, Bermuda 1998.

c) 9...♞c7 should not have independent significance after the standard 10 ♘d3!.

A)

9...♘d7!?

This very interesting idea has not met any kind of refutation. I think that White's approach has been mistaken in both the games played with 9...♙d7. The move ♘e5 does not improve White's position at all, and should be replaced by standard play with ♗d3 and ♙ad1.

10 ♙g5

10 ♘e5?! ♙c6 11 ♙g5 (11 ♘xc6? ♘xc6! 12 ♙e3 ♛c8 gives Black the better chances) 11...♘bd7 12 ♗b3 (other options are 12 ♘xc6 with equality, and 12 ♘d7 ♙xd7! with complicated play) 12...♗a5 13 ♛fe1 ♛ac8 14 ♛ac1 ♙xc3! 15 bxc3 ♘xe5 16 ♛xe5 ♘d5. Black has already won the opening battle. Now White is forced to enter a position where his prospects are small, since he has no compensation for his weakened pawn-structure. After 17 ♙e7 ♛fe8 18 ♙b4 ♗c7 19 ♙f1 ♘xb4 20 ♗xb4 ♛ed8 Black went on to convert his advantage into a full point in Scherbakov-Shipov, Nørresundby 1993.

10...♙e7

10...♙c6 11 ♗d3 ♘bd7 12 ♙ad1.

11 ♛e1 ♙c6 12 ♘e5 ♘d5

Here White agreed a draw in Ginzburg-Tempone, Argentina 1996. However, he had an interesting possibility at his disposal:

13 ♙xe7! ♘xe7

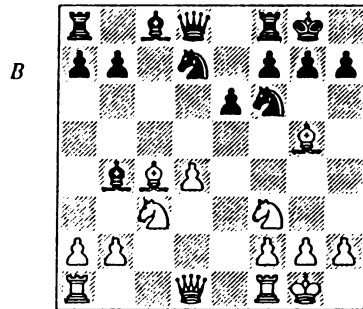
13...♘xc3? loses to 14 ♙xd8 ♘xd1 15 ♙e7, and 13...♗xe7?? 14 ♘xc6 bxc6 15 ♘xd5 cxd5 16 ♙xd5 is totally finished.

14 ♘xf7!? ♛xf7 15 ♙xe6

In this unbalanced position, White has good chances to gain a large advantage, because Black has some problems with his development.

B)

9...♘bd7 10 ♙g5 (D)



10...♙xc3

Alternatives:

a) 10...a6 makes less sense now, compared to move 9, when the knight has already decided on d7. After 11 a4 White is slightly better.

b) 10...♗a5!? is a very interesting possibility. Black wants to play ...♙xc3 and ...b5 to take control over the light squares on the queenside, mainly to use d5. 11 ♗d3! (wise by experience, Vaïsser puts his queen on d3 instead of e2; two years earlier he had chosen the other approach and lost horribly to Korchnoi) 11...h6 12 ♙f4 ♘b6?! (12...b6 is better, but White still has a better position; Black's queen might sometimes go to h5, but it's not always certain that it can do good there) 13 ♙b3 ♙xc3 14 bxc3 ♘bd5 15 ♙d2 ♗c7 16 ♘e5 ♘d7 17 f4, White is far better and won a good game in Vaïsser-Kudrin, Erevan open 1996.

11 bxc3 ♗c7 12 ♙d3!

12 ♗d3 was played previously.

12...♗xc3

12...b6 13 c4 is better for White according to Dolmatov.

13 ♖c1 ♗a5 14 ♘e5!

White must act immediately. 14 ♗e1? b6 15 ♘e5 ♙b7 would not give any compensation for the pawn.

14...♘xe5

14...b6?! 15 ♗f3 ♗d5 16 ♗h3 would give White a very strong attack. Black is not developed, and White is ready for action.

14...♗d5!? is interesting. After 15 ♗e1 ♘h8 16 ♗e3 and now rather than 16...♗xd4? 17 ♖c4 ♗d5 (B.Ivanović-Mirković, Yugoslav Ch 1991) 18 ♘xd7! ♘xd7 19 ♗h5 f5 (19...h6 20 ♗g3; 19...g6 20 ♗h6 ♗g8 21 ♖c7 ♗d4 22 ♗f3) 20 ♗h4 ♘g8 21 ♗xh7+ ♘f7 22 ♗h6! with a winning attack for White, 16...b5! threatening to take on d4, as there is no ♖c4 now, was better, with a double-edged position.

15 ♖c5 ♗a3 16 dxе5!

Necessary. 16 ♗xe5?! ♘d5 gives White no easy way to continue the attack.

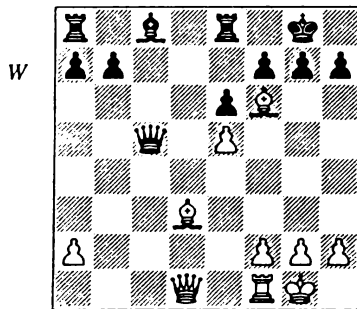
16...♗xc5

16...♘e4?! 17 ♗xc8 ♘xg5 18 ♗xa8 ♗xa8 19 h4 g6 20 ♙b1! wins a piece. Also 16...♘d7 17 ♗b5! is very dangerous for Black, as he has no development – Speelman.

17 ♙xf6 ♗e8? (D)

After this Black is in deep trouble. He can stay in the fight with 17...gxf6! 18 ♗g4+ ♘h8 19 ♗h4 (19 exf6? is refuted by 19...♗g8 20 ♗h4 h5!) 19...f5 20 ♗f6+ ♘g8 21 ♗g5+ ♘h8 22 ♗f6+ ♘g8 23 ♗e1!? ♙d7 24 ♗e3 ♗c1+ 25 ♙f1 ♗xe3 26 fe3. This position is interesting, as Black is fine materially, but has some problems with his king.

Dolmatov thinks White retains some winning chances, although he has not found a forced win.



18 ♙xh7+!! ♘xh7

18...♘f8 19 ♗g4 gxf6 20 exf6 and White wins.

19 ♗h5+ ♘g8 20 ♗g5 ♗f8

20...g6? is met by 21 ♗h6.

21 ♗d1!

Now Black has only one way to try to defend.

21...b6 22 ♗d4 ♙a6 23 ♗g4 ♙e2 24 ♙xg7!

24 ♗g3? is not a good idea. 24...♗ed8 25 h3 ♗d3! gives Black counterplay, and after 26 f3?! ♗d1+ 27 ♘h2 ♙d3! 28 ♙xg7 ♗c5 he is actually winning.

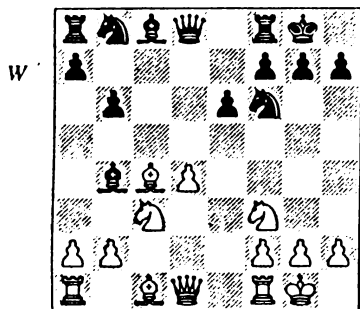
Also 24 ♗xg7+ ♗xg7 25 ♗xg7+ does not work in view of the cool reply 25...♘h8!.

24...♙xg4 25 ♙xf8+ ♘xf8 26 ♗xg4 ♗ac8

Now, rather than 27 h4, as in Dolmatov-Speelman, Hastings 1989/90, 27 ♗g5! is stronger, to imprison the king on f8 and only then start the march with the h-pawn.

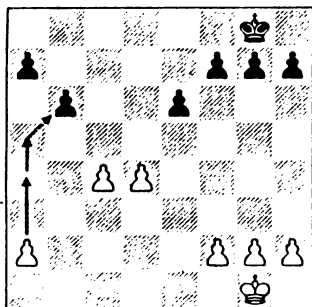
# 8 9...b6

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♘f6  
5 ♘c3 e6 6 ♘f3 ♙b4 7 ♙d3 dxc4 8  
♙xc4 0-0 9 0-0 b6 (D)



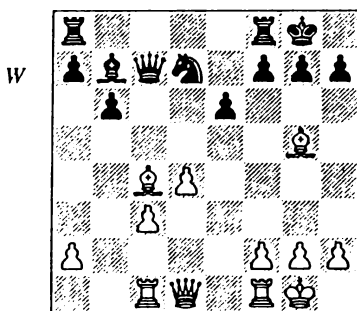
This line is the most popular line in the 6...♙b4 variation, and therefore it receives more detailed coverage than 9...a6, which I actually consider more critical. Yet even top-level players such as Karpov and Polugaevsky have preferred 9...b6, so maybe it is just me!?

The pawn structure often arising from this line looks like this.



Black's structure, in principle, is superior. White has three pawn-islands, and the c- and d-pawns could easily turn out to be weak. On the other hand, with pieces on the board, White has a space advantage, and a very strong plan in a2-a4-a5xb6 to create a weakness, as in the Christiansen game below.

The plan I suggest White uses is the one including the exchange of a pair of knights. The examples below illustrate how that benefits White. Sometimes Black gives up the two bishops, and there are also instances of Black being careless in exchanging on c3, giving White a kingside attack. I also present one example where I myself am incredibly stupid in my hope of quick victory.



Sadler - J. Cooper  
*British League (4NCL) 1997/8*

This position occurs rather easily if one follows my suggestions in the

theoretical section. This is a rather one-sided example where White has a considerably higher rating, but still it is important to see how he keeps everything under control.

15 ♖b3

This is the key idea: the bishop is stronger on b3 than anywhere else. This actually came as a surprise for me – I had always placed it on d3.

15...e5?!

This opens the diagonal for the bishop on b3, while the advance itself does not really accomplish anything. White is better already.

16 ♖g4 ♖h8

17 ♖h6 was threatened.

17 ♖h4 f6?!

Black is trying to liberate his rook, but the pawn-chain is not so solid as it appears.

18 ♖c2!

Forcing Black to make further concessions. If Black could maintain his fragile set-up he might only be slightly worse.

18...e4 19 ♖d2!

After 19 ♖f4 White cuts off his control over e4 and has to reckon with ...g5.

19...f5 20 ♖f4 ♖c6 21 c4

White's central pawns are very intimidating, and Black feels forced to create counterplay. It turns out to be clearly insufficient, so he would have been better off waiting for White to come at him, though there would only be small chances of saving the game.

21...♠ae8 22 ♖b3 e3?! 23 f3 ♖f6 24 ♠fe1

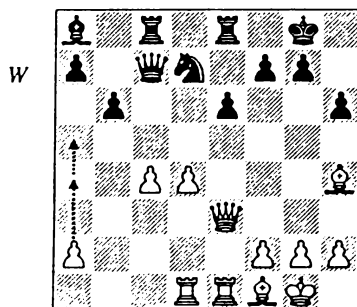
The pawn is simply picked up.

24...e2 25 ♖f2 ♖g4

Desperation.

26 fxg4 fxg4 27 d5 ♖f6 28 ♖e3 ♖e5 29 ♖xe2 1-0

The following game shows some positional ideas for White against a solid defence. It is one of my all-time favourite games in the Panov.



Christiansen – Winants  
Antwerp 1993

23 ♖g3 ♖b7 24 ♖d6

White should have started to play on the queenside at once with 24 a4! with the same plan as in the game.

24...♖f6 25 f3 ♠ed8 26 ♖e5 ♖d7 27 ♖g3 ♖f8 28 a4!

White is planning to create a weakness on the queenside, and at the same time to get rid of his isolated pawn. Against this plan there is no defence, and White gains a clear advantage.

28...♖d7 29 ♖a3 ♖c6 30 a5 ♖g6

Christiansen gives the line 30...b5 31 d5 exd5 32 ♠e7 b4 33 ♖xb4 ♖f5 34 ♠e5 with a clear advantage to White.

31 axb6 axb6 32 ♖b4

Black is under a lot of pressure, not least because he lacks an active plan. The normal central breaks with ...b5 and ...e5, to create squares, are not

possible, and the pawn on b6 is weak. Also White can always have fun with his two bishops, while he is thinking about opening the position for tactics with d4-d5.

**32...h5!?**

This is an attempt to gain counterplay that in the end turns out to be a weakening of the black king's position. However, it is hard to blame Black for not waiting for his fate.

**33 h3!**

33 ♖xb6 is possible, but allows Black some counterplay after 33...h4 34 ♔f2 h3, when the white king is seriously weakened, and the white pawns cannot advance without problems.

**33...♗b7 34 ♗b2 ♔d7 35 ♖b1 ♕e7 36 ♔f2 ♖b8 37 ♗c3**

White is manoeuvring and trying to catch Black in a position where he cannot defend everything. Meanwhile he does not change the structure. Note that the bishop would be stronger on b3. There are no defensive duties that have to be taken care of, so it could as well have influence over the d5-square. Nevertheless, Christiansen was unhappy with his last move. He mentions 37 ♖e5! as an improvement. The idea is to create further weaknesses in the black position. But as before, he gets the chance again.

**37...♗c7 38 ♖e5 ♕f5**

With the black queen on b7 White would have had d4-d5 to undermine the black knight.

**39 ♗b2**

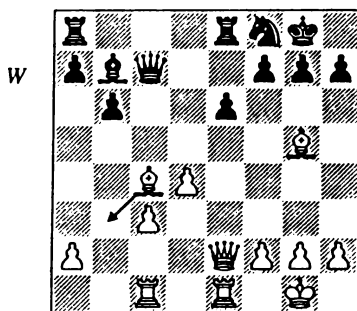
White takes the queen out of the pin and threatens 40 d5.

**39...g6 40 ♖be1 ♗d8**

Now White could have started an unstoppable attack with 41 d5! exd5

42 ♖xf5 gxf5 43 ♗e5 followed by ♔d4. Instead the game was less clear after 41 ♔d1?! h4 42 d5! b5!, although White won in the end.

The following game is an illustration of what happens if White is not careful, and says goodbye to his bishop-pair.



**Østenstad – B. Stein**  
*Gausdal 1992*

This position has not come from the move-order I suggest, but still White would maintain the standard position with 17 ♔b3!, and then also a little advantage. Instead he adopted a quite different plan:

**17 ♔b5?! ♔c6 18 ♔d3 ♕g6**

Black is already close to being equal here, but after the next move he is even better.

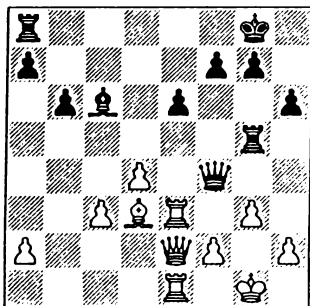
**19 ♗h5? h6! 20 ♔e3 ♕f4 21 ♔xf4 ♗xf4**

Now that he has given up the bishop-pair, White has no compensation for his fragile pawn-structure; his position has lost much of its dynamism. The following is a powerful demonstration from Black of how one should

increase the pressure in a slightly better position.

22 ♠e3 ♠ed8 23 ♠ce1 ♠d5 24 ♖e2 ♠g5 25 g3? (D)

This must be wrong. The light squares around the white king are now permanently ill. After 25 f3 White would only suffer from a slight discomfort.



25...♖f6 26 ♠c2 ♠d8 27 ♖d3

This is rather naïve. The weakening of the black king's position is insignificant, since White has no knight or bishop that can take advantage of it.

27...g6 28 ♠b3 ♔g7

Black has all the time in the world.

29 ♖e2 ♠d6 30 f3 ♠a5 31 f4

These two moves with the f-pawn do not really make any sense. White is now positionally lost.

31...♠d5 32 ♠e5 ♠d8 33 ♖f2 ♠c8

Black now focuses on White's permanent weakness – and not before, since White could never solve the problem. Previously Black was occupied with creating further weakness, since one weakness alone is not enough for a full point.

34 ♖b2 ♖d8 35 ♠c1 b5

The final attack is started.

36 ♠xd5 exd5 37 ♖g2 b4 38 c4 ♠xc4 0-1

The following two games illustrate White's attacking chances in this line. In both cases Black is careless in the opening, but still there is something in the structure that provides White with good chances of gaining an attack.

Acs – Vadasz  
Budapest 1997

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 e6 5 ♘c3 ♘f6 6 ♘f3 ♠b4 7 ♠d3 dxc4 8 ♠xc4 0-0 9 0-0 b6 10 ♠g5 ♠b7 11 ♠c1

Here I recommend 11 ♘e5 as the most dangerous plan, but what happens in these games is not without interest.

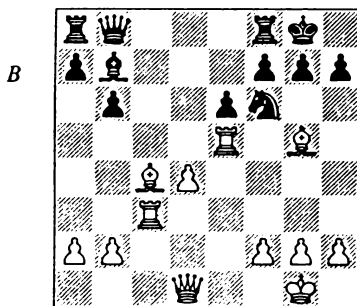
11...♘bd7 12 ♠e1 ♠xc3?!

This lands Black in trouble. A lot better is 12...♠c8 13 ♠d3 ♠xc3 14 bxc3 with another main line, but not one considered in this book.

13 ♠xc3 ♖b8 14 ♘e5!

Clearing the way for the queen.

14...♘xe5 15 ♠xe5 (D)



15...♘d7



thereby gives White a winning position, where he can exploit the bad knight and the weaknesses in the black position.

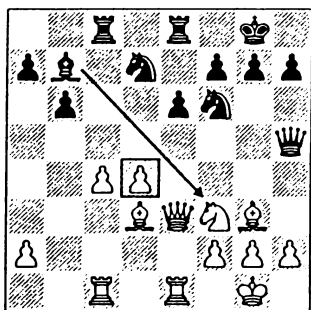
23 ♖e1 b5! 24 c5?!

I was simply so disgusted with my play that I stopped caring about making good moves. 24 cxb5 axb5 25 ♜xb5 ♙d5 wins back the pawn with a superior structure for Black, although the game should be a draw.

24...♙d5

With a fine game for Black, which he won. It was so badly played by White that I will spare myself the rest. I ought to mention that John Emms found a draw later for White, so it's not that bad yet.

In this game Black had the chance to wreck the white king's position with 18...♙xf3, but he refrained from it, with good reason. Sometimes, though, this exchange can be good. Here are three interesting examples featuring an exchange on f3.



Thorhallsson – Nisipeanu  
Erevan OL 1996

19...♙xf3 20 gxf3 ♖ed8

Black would love to bring his knight to c6 and put pressure on d4.

This is prevented by White's next move.

21 ♖b1! ♜a5!

The queen is an embarrassment after 21...♘b8 22 ♖b5! ♜h3 23 ♙f1, when it has to be disadvantageously exchanged by 23...♜h6 24 ♜xh6 gxh6. Black's position must then be considered a lot worse.

22 ♙d6 ♘f8!

Black is forced to allow ♙e7, since otherwise he will never have any counterplay. Therefore he brings the knight to the kingside to avoid denuding his king completely.

23 ♙e7?!

White would have kept equality with 23 ♙b4!, forcing the queen back to the kingside, where it can't grab pawns.

23...♖d7 24 ♙xf6 gxf6 25 ♖b5?

A bad pawn sacrifice, but passive play would be an admission that White is worse.

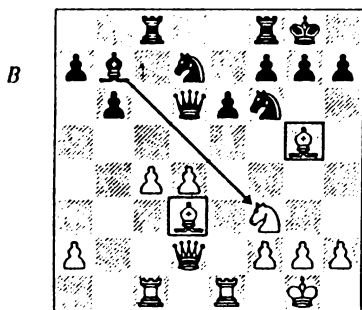
25...♜xa2 26 ♖h5 ♖xc4!

A strong sacrifice, by which Black takes control of the central squares and eliminates an important part of White's attacking potential. I am sure Nisipeanu was counting on winning the game here.

27 ♙xc4 ♜xc4 28 ♖h4 ♘g6 29 ♖c1 ♜d5 30 ♖c8+ ♖d8 31 ♖xd8+ ♜xd8

This endgame is obviously without real saving chances for White. Black's queen and knight work well together, his king is safe and his pawns are very strong.

In the following game Black does not achieve any counterplay against the wrecked white pawns, and the two bishops prove to be decisive.



**P. Cramling – Landenbergue**  
*Biel 1994*

16...♙xf3 17 ♗xf3 ♞fd8 18 ♞cd1 e5

Black is trying to create squares for his knights, but at the same time he also opens up diagonals for White's bishops.

19 d5 ♞e8 20 ♖h1 ♜h5?

Black is going for f4, which does not give him any targets, but otherwise it is difficult for him to generate active counterplay. It is perhaps doubtful whether this structure is good for Black, despite the good squares he has for his pieces.

21 ♞g1 ♜f8 22 ♞c1 ♜g6 23 ♙e3  
♞c7 24 a4

White is starting her queenside play in the traditional way.

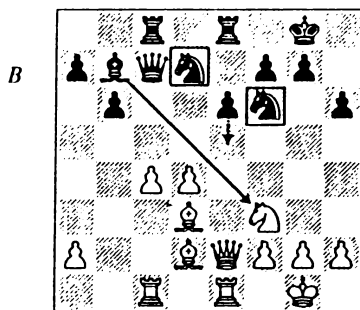
24...♜f6 25 a5 ♜f4 26 axb6 axb6  
27 ♞b1 ♜xd3 28 ♞xb6 ♞a3

Black enters a mass-exchange that leaves him in a lost position.

29 ♞xf6 ♞xc4 30 ♞c6! ♞xc6 31  
dxc6 ♜f4 32 ♞d7 ♞a8 33 ♙xf4 exf4  
34 ♞d1 ♞f8 35 ♖g2 g6 36 c7 1-0

The pawn queens sooner or later.

The following game is in some ways similar. The main difference is White's kingside structure.



**Portisch – Karpov**  
*Bugojno 1978*

17...♙xf3

This exchange does not damage White's pawn structure, but it does give Black a chance to create squares for his knights in the centre.

18 ♞xf3 e5 19 ♞g3?

White is playing to win. If White played 19 d5 the game would be level or maybe even slightly better for White.

19...exd4 20 ♞xe8+ ♜xe8 21 ♙f4  
♞c6 22 ♙f5 ♞d8

Black untangles himself without much difficulty.

23 h3 ♜c5 24 ♞d1 ♞f6 25 ♙b1

White lacks scope for his bishops, and is clearly worse.

25...♞e6 26 ♖h2 ♖f8 27 ♙e5  
♞xc4

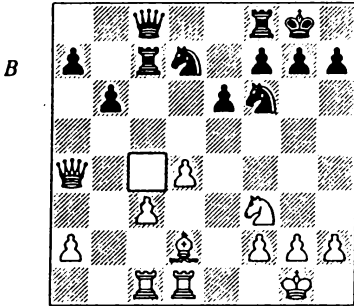
Another pawn goes, and without any visible compensation at all.

28 ♞f4 ♜e6 29 ♞e4 ♞d5 30 ♞e2  
♜d6

White has no compensation at all and he soon had to resign.

Sometimes White is forced to give up his light-squared bishop, often because of ...♜g4, forcing White to play

♙e4 and exchange the bishop. This often leaves him with no positive prospects. One of the worst examples of what can happen if White gives up the bishop-pair is the following.



Taimanov – Karpov  
Moscow II 1973

White would be about equal, if he had time to play 18 c4. Black prevents this with a superb pawn sacrifice.

17...♙c4! 18 ♜xa7 ♜c6

Threatening to win the queen with ...♙a8 and ...♙a4.

19 ♜a3 ♙c8

Black has more than enough compensation. White has no active play, and Black can simply improve his position before he tries to prove an advantage.

20 h3 h6 21 ♙b1 ♙a4 22 ♜b3 ♘d5  
23 ♙dc1 ♙c4 24 ♙b2 f6

Karpov is the champion of this kind of chess. His play is super-prophylactic. It is not possible to imagine what possibilities he prevents with a move like this.

25 ♙e1 ♙f7 26 ♜d1 ♘f8

The knight is brought to a better square – chess that everyone understands.

27 ♙b3 ♘g6 28 ♜b1 ♙a8 29 ♙e4  
♙ca4 30 ♙b2 ♘f8 31 ♜d3 ♙c4 32  
♙e1 ♙a3 33 ♜b1 ♘g6 34 ♙c1 ♘xc3

Black was not making any progress any more, and he had to take the pawn back, though this gives White some air.

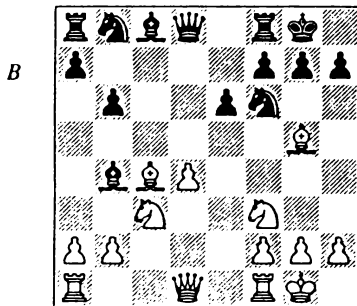
35 ♜d3 ♘e2+ 36 ♜xe2 ♙xc1+ 37  
♙xc1 ♜xc1+ 38 ♙h2 ♙xf3! 39 gxf3  
♘h4 0-1

This position is very promising for Black, but White has no reason to resign. That is why I assume that he lost on time. A possible continuation was 40 ♙c2 ♜f4+ 41 ♙h1 ♘xf3 42 ♙g2 ♘xd4 43 ♜e3! ♜d6 44 ♙b2 with good chances for a successful defence.

## The Theory of 9...b6

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♘f6  
5 ♘c3 e6 6 ♘f3 ♙b4 7 ♙d3 dxc4 8  
♙xc4 0-0 9 0-0 b6 10 ♙g5 (D)

10 ♜c2 can often transpose, and is given as the main line in *ECO*, but I have decided to concentrate on 10 ♙g5, which in my opinion is the most logical move, and is also preferred by Sadler and Gelfand, the best players who use this line. 10 ♙e1 is another way of treating this position.



## 10...♖b7

Black cannot solve his problems with 10...h6 11 ♙xf6! ♜xf6 12 ♘c5 ♖b7 13 ♜g4:

a) 13...♜g5 14 ♜xg5 hxg5 15 f4 g4 16 f5 gives White tremendous pressure against f7.

b) 13...♞c8 14 ♞ae1 ♘c6 15 ♘xf7! ♘xd4 16 ♞xc6! ♘xc6 17 ♙xe6 gives Black a lot to think about. If the position can be saved at all is doubtful.

c) 13...♙xc3 14 bxc3 ♞c8 and now White should play 15 ♞ae1! (instead of 15 f4 as played in Velimirović-Ilinčić, Vrnjačka Banja 1992) 15...♞c7 (protecting f7; 15...♘c6 16 ♘xf7! ♘xd4 17 ♜xd4! ♜xd4 18 cxd4 ♞xc4 19 ♘d6 ♞c7 20 ♘xb7 ♞xb7 21 ♞xe6 is obviously a lot better for White) 16 ♜g3! ♜d8 (16...♞e7 would be met by 17 f4 with the idea of 18 f5 and a strong attack) 17 ♘xf7!? ♞xf7 18 ♞xe6 with good compensation for the sacrificed material.

## 11 ♘e5 (D)

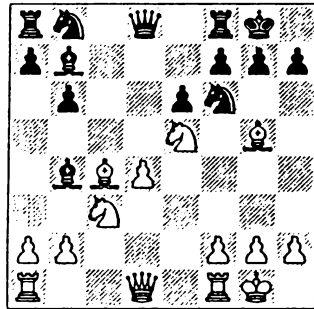
Or 11 ♜e2 ♙xc3 12 bxc3 ♘bd7 13 ♘e5 and play transposes to the main line.

11 ♞e1 is an obvious alternative to exchanging the knights:

a) 11...♙xc3 is pretty standard, but I would prefer to keep the bishop a few moves, to maintain more options. 12 bxc3 ♘bd7 13 ♙b3 ♜c7 14 ♞c1 b5 15 ♜d3 a6 16 ♘e5 ♙d5 17 ♙c2 g6 18 ♜h3 (White is developing a strong attack along traditional lines) 18...♞fc8 19 ♜h4 ♘xe5 20 dxe5 ♘d7 21 ♞c3 ♜c5 22 ♙e7! (this shuts the queen out, and traps the black king on the kingside) 22...♜c7 23 ♜h6 f5 24 exf6 ♘f8 1-0 Rozentalis-Benko, New York 1994.

b) 11...♘bd7 is the most natural move, since the bishop can always be parted with later. 12 ♞c1 ♞c8 13 ♙d3 ♞c8 14 ♜c2 ♙xc3 15 bxc3 ♜c7 16 ♙h4 ♜d6!?, Gulko-Short, New York PCA Ct (4) 1994. This is a very typical position from this line, where the result will depend more on the level of play than on the opening preparation.

B



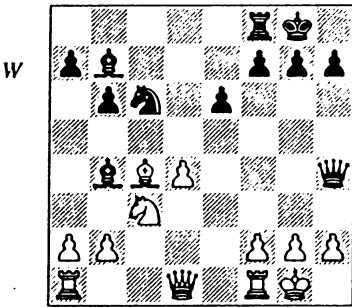
## 11...♙xc3

Or:

a) 11...♘c6!? is an interesting exchange sacrifice. There are two logical continuations:

a1) 12 ♙xf6 ♜xf6 13 ♘d7 ♜h4 14 ♘xf8 ♞xf8 (14...♘xd4 has been suggested, but White seems to hang on to a central blockade, and thereby a clear advantage due to his material gains after 15 ♘d7 ♙d6 16 g3 ♜h3 17 ♙d5! exd5 18 ♜xd4 ♜xd7 19 ♘xd5) and now (D):

a11) 15 ♘e2?! (this leads only to equal play) 15...♞d8 16 ♜b3! (White has to be careful; after 16 a3? ♙d6 17 g3 ♜h3 18 f3 Black would have a beautiful attack with 18...♘d4!! 19 ♘xd4 ♙g3 20 hxg3 (20 ♜e2! limits the damage, though White is struggling after 20...♞xd4 21 ♞ad1 ♙e5!



with the trick 22 ♖xe5?? ♜g4+! 23 ♜f2 ♖xf3+ 24 ♜e1 ♜e4+) 20...♖xg3+ 21 ♜h1 ♖h4+ 22 ♜g2 ♜xd4 and besides the attack on the white king, Black is also about to be material up) 16...♞xd4 17 ♞xd4 ♜xd4 18 ♖xb4 ♞xg2! 19 ♖b5! (unpinning the bishop and threatening mate; besides, the queen can help the king later from e5) 19...g6 20 ♞e2 (20 ♜fd1? ♜g4! leaves White's king with no defence) 20...♞h3 and here 21 ♞f3?? ♖g4+! 0-1 was the sudden finish of Farago-Rigo, Hungary 1976. Instead 21 ♖e5! would have kept the position alive, owing to the possibility of using the queen as a blockader on g3. A realistic line is 21...♜d5 22 ♖b8+ ♜g7 23 f4! (not 23 ♞f3?? ♜g5+ 24 ♜h1 ♞xf1 25 ♜xf1 ♖h3 with mate or something even more painful) 23...♞xf1 24 ♜xf1 ♜d2 25 ♖e5+ ♖f6 26 ♞f2 ♜xb2 27 ♞d3 ♜b4, when Black has three pawns for the piece, and approximately equal chances.

a12) White could try for more with 15 a3!, the idea being to limit the attack on d4. 15...♞d6 16 g3 ♖h3 17 d5 (forced) 17...♞e5 18 ♞e2 exd5 19 ♞xd5 and again it seems that White will be able to defend his king, and

slowly bring his rooks to better squares. Still, Black has a lot of tricks.

a2) 12 ♞xc6!? ♞xc6 13 ♖b3 ♞e7 14 ♜ad1 keeps a small advantage.

b) 11...♞bd7 is a perfectly playable move, which lets White try a very interesting idea: 12 ♞xd7!? ♖xd7 13 ♞xf6 gxf6 14 d5! (other moves fail to exploit the weakness in the black pawn formation) 14...♞xc3 15 bxc3 ♞xd5 16 ♖g4+ (forcing the king to h8, where it will soon be checked again) 16...♜h8 17 ♖d4 (17 ♜fd1!? ♜g8 18 ♜xd5 ♖c7 19 ♖d4 exd5 20 ♖xf6+ ♜g7 21 ♞xd5 gives White compensation for the sacrificed material, but probably only enough to draw) 17...♜ac8? (Black should protect his f6-pawn with 17...♖d8 18 ♞xd5 exd5 19 ♜fe1, when White has good play in the centre, and the black pawns are very weak; if it is enough for an advantage is hard to say, but I'm close to believing so) and now rather than 18 ♖xf6+?! ♜g8 19 ♞d3 ♖d8 20 ♖h6 f5 21 c4 ♞xg2, when, with accurate play, Black kept the balance in Yusupov-Ivanchuk, Brussels Ct (6) 1991, White can secure a clearly favourable position with 18 ♞a6! ♜c5 19 ♖xf6+ ♜g8 20 ♜ad1! (the threat is 21 c4) 20...♖c6 21 ♖g5+! ♜h8 22 ♖h6 ♜g8 (22...♜g8? loses to 23 ♖f6+ ♜g7 24 c4) 23 ♜d4 ♞e4 24 ♞d3! ♞g6 25 ♞xg6 ffg6 26 ♜fd1, when the black king is in trouble, and the white rooks are ready to make life even worse for him.

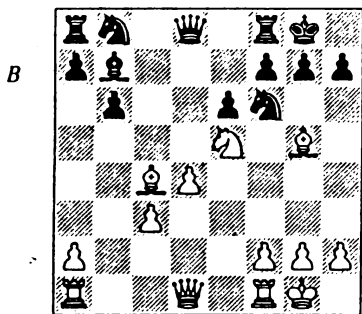
c) 11...♞e7!? (I am more sceptical about this idea than 'a' and 'b') 12 ♜e1!? ♞c6?! (this allows some nice tactics; still, White keeps the initiative after 12...♞bd7!? 13 ♞xf7 ♜xf7 14 ♞xe6 ♞f8) 13 ♞a6! ♖c8 (13...♞xa6

14  $\text{Qxc6}$   $\text{Wd6}$  15  $\text{Qxc7+}$   $\text{Wxe7}$  16  $\text{Qd5}$  is disgusting) 14  $\text{Qxb7}$   $\text{Wxb7}$  15  $\text{Wf3}$   $\text{Bac8}$  16  $\text{Bac1}$  and now:

c1) 16... $\text{Qd5?!$  17  $\text{Qxd5}$   $\text{Qxg5}$  18  $\text{Qxc6!}$   $\text{exd5}$  19  $\text{Wxd5}$  (White has won a pawn for nothing, and Black decided to give up his queen) 19... $\text{Qxc1}$  20  $\text{Qe7+}$   $\text{Wxe7}$  21  $\text{Bxe7}$   $\text{Qxb2}$  22  $\text{g3}$  with a clear plus for White in M.Gurevich-L.B.Hansen, Tåstrup 1992.

c2) Gurevich suggests 16... $\text{Bfd8!}$  17  $\text{Qc4}$  (17  $\text{Qxf6!?$   $\text{Qxf6}$  18  $\text{Qc4}$   $\text{Qxe5}$  19  $\text{dxe5}$   $\text{We7}$  20  $\text{Wf4}$  gives White a pleasant position as well) 17... $\text{Qxe4}$  18  $\text{Wxf7+}$   $\text{Ch8}$  19  $\text{Qxc6}$   $\text{Qxg5}$  20  $\text{Wxe7}$   $\text{Bd7}$  21  $\text{Wxg5}$   $\text{Bxc6}$  as a better chance of survival. Still I believe the extra pawn should count for more than the small advantage, which is Gurevich's judgement.

12  $\text{bxc3}$  (D)



12... $\text{Qbd7}$

12... $\text{Wc7}$  13  $\text{Bc1}$   $\text{Qbd7}$  14  $\text{Qxd7}$   $\text{Qxd7}$  15  $\text{Qb3}$  (Sadler-J.Cooper, British League (4NCL) 1997/8) leads to a position similar to the main line – see p. 94.

13  $\text{We2}$   $\text{Wc7}$  14  $\text{Qxd7}$

14  $\text{Bac1?!$  is wrong. Black is better after 14... $\text{Qxe5}$  15  $\text{dxe5}$   $\text{Qe4}$  16  $\text{Qf4}$

$\text{Bac8}$  17  $\text{Qd3}$   $\text{f5!}$ , when White entered a permanently bad position with 18  $\text{Qxe4}$   $\text{fxe4}$  19  $\text{Wg4}$   $\text{Qd5}$  20  $\text{Bfe1}$   $\text{Wf7}$  21  $\text{Qg3}$   $\text{Bc4}$  in Franić-Lalić, Makarska Tučepi 1995. Black went on to score a win by good technique.

14... $\text{Qxd7}$

A mistake would be 14... $\text{Wxd7?}$  15  $\text{Qxf6}$   $\text{gxf6}$  16  $\text{d5!}$  (destroying Black's pawn structure) 16... $\text{Qxd5}$  (16... $\text{exd5}$  17  $\text{Qd3}$   $\text{Qg7}$  18  $\text{Wh5}$   $\text{Bh8}$  19  $\text{Bab1!}$  would give White a dangerous attack) 17  $\text{Bcd1}$   $\text{Bfd8}$  (17... $\text{Qxc4?}$  18  $\text{Wg4+}$ ) 18  $\text{Wg4+}$   $\text{Qf8}$  (18... $\text{Ch8?}$  is a mistake because of 19  $\text{Wh4}$  with the idea 19... $\text{We7?}$  20  $\text{Qd3}$ , when Black might as well resign) 19  $\text{Qxd5}$   $\text{exd5}$  20  $\text{Wh5}$   $\text{Qg7}$  21  $\text{Bd3}$  (Black has difficulties defending) 21... $\text{Be8}$  and now 22  $\text{Bg3+!}$   $\text{Qf8}$  23  $\text{Wxh7!}$   $\text{Bac8}$  24  $\text{Wg7+}$   $\text{Qe7}$  25  $\text{Bc3+}$   $\text{Qd6}$  26  $\text{Wxf6+}$  leaves White close to winning. Instead after 22  $\text{Bxd5?}$   $\text{We6}$  23  $\text{Bd3}$   $\text{f5!}$  24  $\text{Bf3}$  (Vaiser-Polugaevsky, Sochi 1988) 24... $\text{Bcd8!}$ , there will be no counterplay against the c-pawn, but perhaps against the white king.

15  $\text{Bac1}$   $\text{Wc6}$

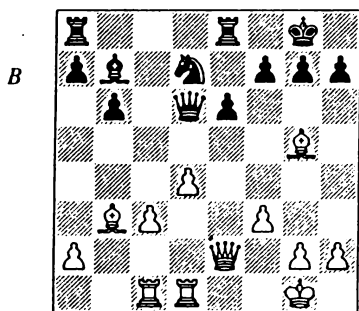
Or:

a) 15... $\text{Bfe8}$  should not make a lot of difference, although Black managed to equalize in Dokhoian-Rogers, Wijk an Zee 1989: 16  $\text{Bfe1}$   $\text{Wc6}$  17  $\text{f3}$   $\text{Bec8}$  18  $\text{Qd3}$  (18  $\text{Qb3}$  is probably an improvement, to follow the same concept as the main line) 18... $\text{Wd6}$  19  $\text{Wf2}$   $\text{h6}$  20  $\text{Qd2}$ . White might be slightly better, but he could not prove it, and the game ended in a draw.

b) 15... $\text{e5}$  must be premature, since it opens a diagonal against the sensitive square  $\text{f7}$  for the white bishop. In the game Kindermann-Stanec, Vienna

1996 White gained an advantage with a straightforward plan: 16 ♖b3 ♜ae8 17 ♗g4 ♘h8 18 ♗g3! (a good move that exerts some pressure on the black centre) 18...f6 19 ♕d2 ♜c6 20 ♜fe1 f5 21 f3 f4 22 ♗f2.

16 f3 ♗d6 17 ♜fd1 ♜fe8 18 ♕b3 (D)



This is the concept. The bishop supports the advance of the pawns in the

centre, instead of being in the way on d3.

18...♜ac8 19 ♕h4

Beautiful prophylaxis. The bishop is ready to enter the game from g3 and f2, and it also leaves its slightly fragile spot on g5.

19...♗a3 20 c4

Here White is slightly better due to his bishop-pair and central control. Nevertheless, Black should not be so badly off. Another possibility here is 20...b5!? 21 c5 a6 with the idea ...♘b8-c6, but I doubt that this suffices for equality.

20...a5 21 ♗d2 e5

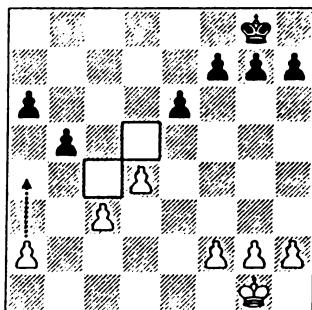
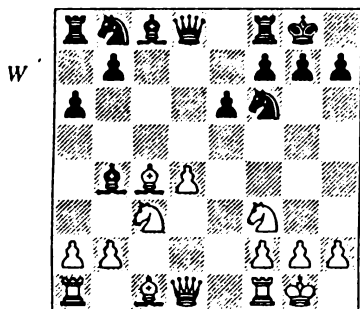
21...a4 22 ♕c2 yields nothing.

22 d5 e4

This attempt to create counterplay allows the bishop manoeuvre ♕c2-f5, which caused some problems in the game Gelfand-J.Polgar, Wijk aan Zee 1998.

# 9 9...a6!

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♘f6  
5 ♘c3 e6 6 ♘f3 ♙b4 7 ♙d3 dxc4 8  
♙xc4 0-0 9 0-0 a6! (D)

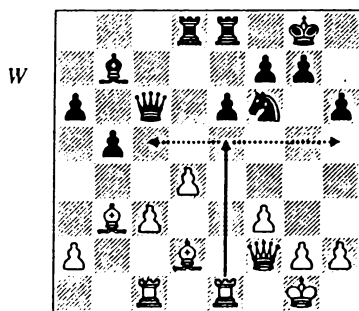


I believe this is Black's best line in the Panov. I know many players who have abandoned the Panov due to the 6...♙b4 lines. I don't think that one should be so drastic, but instead prepare for it! I believe White has lasting structural advantages in the 9...b6 line, but this might not be the case in this line. The structure Black is hoping for is shown in the next diagram:

By playing 9...a6 instead of 9...b6, Black delays the development of his bishop one move. To compensate for this, he has the possibility of controlling the light squares. White has no structural advantages, but will have to play for a kingside attack or to undermine the queenside structure by a2-a4. Often White has the two bishops, while Black has given up his king's bishop to change the structure. Generally it's

difficult to say anything definitive about the variation, as it has been insufficiently tested at top level. Why this is the case is hard to say – probably it's a matter of fashion.

How White should play against this line is also not easy to say. There follow two instructive examples where White was successful, which might be an indication of what is needed.



Sadler – Emms  
*British Ch (Hove) 1997*

Black's only true regret is the loss of the dark-squared bishop. By an ingenious rook manoeuvre, Sadler tries to take advantage of this.

21 ♖e5!!

The two exclamation marks are mainly for the originality of the idea. The rook is transferred to h3, where it would be hopelessly stuck if the attack turns out to fail. But everything seems to have been well calculated...

21...♟d7

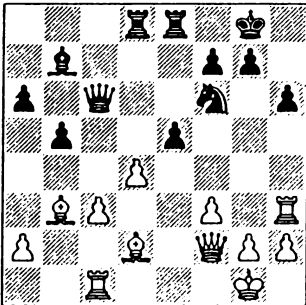
21...a5?! 22 c4! would leave the pawn on a5 as a hopelessly lost target.

22 ♖h5 ♟f6

This also seems to be forced. The knight belongs on f6. Trying to bring the queen into the defence is no better: 22...♞d6 23 ♖h4 ♞e7 (23...♟f6 24 ♖xh6! gxf6 25 ♖xh6 with a winning attack) 24 ♞g3 ♟h7 25 ♖g5! and Black has to resign after a few moves, e.g. 25...♟f6 26 ♖c2+ ♟h8 27 ♖xh6+ gxf6 28 ♖h4.

23 ♖h3 e5! (D)

Black calmly tries to open files, not for the rooks in the centre, but for the defence of the kingside over the sixth rank. 23...♞d6 24 ♖xh6 gxf6 25 ♖h4 would mean an immediate disaster.



24 ♖xh6! gxf6 25 ♖xh6

The main threat is naturally 26 ♖h4, but also 26 ♖g3+ could prove deadly.

25...♟g4?

Unfortunately Black now loses his cool. Some other options:

a) 25...♞d6? loses at once to 26 dxe5.

b) 25...♟g7?! puts up more resistance, but White still enjoys a very strong, probably winning, attack after 26 ♖h4 ♞d6 27 ♞g5+ ♟f8 28 ♖h8+ ♟e7 29 ♖xe5+ ♟d8 30 ♖xe8+ ♟xe8 31 ♖xf7.

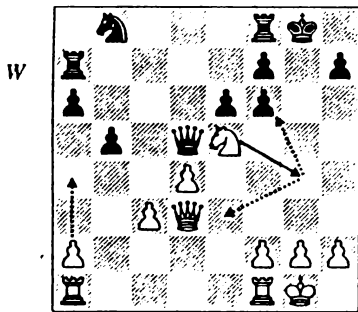
c) The right move is the calm 25...♟f8!, which prevents checks on g3 and prepares ...♞d6 to defend the knight. Still, the position might prove to be a little better for White after 26 ♖h4 ♞d6 27 ♞g5 e4! 28 ♖h8+ (not 28 ♖e1? ♞xc3) 28...♟e7 29 ♖e5+ ♟d7 30 ♖xe8 ♟xe8 31 ♖xf7 ♟f6 although everything seems to be very unclear. The black king is close to safety on the queenside, while the white king can soon be exposed. On the other hand, the black pieces give a very clumsy impression, so possibly there is a way for White to maintain the initiative.

26 ♖xc6 ♟xf2 27 ♖c7 ♟h3+ 28 gxf3 ♖d5 29 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 30 ♖e1 ♖e6 31 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 32 dxe5 ♖xe5 33 ♟f2

This rook endgame is of course lost for Black, and White managed to win after many moves.

In the following game Ibragimov makes the most out of a slight weakness in the black king's position. Naturally the difficult part is mainly to create this weakness in the opponent's

camp, but it is also necessary to know how to exploit this when it occurs.



**Ibragimov – Zagrebely**  
*St Petersburg Chigorin mem 1997*

18 ♖g4 ♘d7 19 a4 ♜b7 20 axb5  
axb5 21 ♘e3

The knight has been transferred to a useful square, instead of wasting its time on f3.

21... ♜d6 22 ♜ab1 ♜fb8 23 d5!

Attacking the black pawn-structure and thereby trying to create more air around the black king. Black cannot keep the position closed due to the knight's possibilities of using the f5-square.

23... ♜f5 24 ♜fd1 ♜e5 25 ♘c2!

The knight has no further job to do on e3, so it is transferred to d4, where it attacks both the black weaknesses, b5 and e6. Black is probably positionally lost by now.

25... ♘f6 26 dxe6 fxe6 27 ♘d4

Now the e6-pawn is doomed.

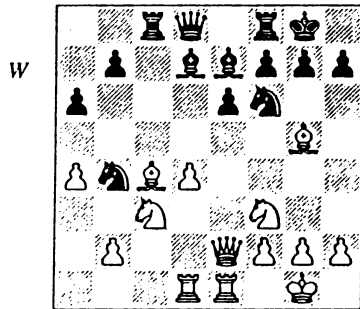
27... ♜b6 28 ♜e1 ♜d5 29 ♜xe6!

A little combination finishes the job.

29... ♜xe6 30 ♜g3+ ♜f7 31 ♜xb8

Black has no defence, and White went on to win in 40 moves.

In the following example White did not manage to win, although he had all the chances. If White answers 9...a6 with 10 a4, with a likely transposition to the Queen's Gambit Accepted, this is how he should place his pieces.



**Vaïsser – Marciano**  
*Narbonne 1997*

The rooks should be where they are now, since in this way they support action on the kingside best. The queen would love to be on h3, but this is not always possible, and then e2 is normally a good square for the queen. White is not too happy about having played a4, but this belongs to the problems of the opening, and not of the middlegame, which starts with a central break.

15 d5! exd5

15... ♘bxd5?? 16 ♙xd5 ♘xd5 17 ♜xd5! gives White a winning position, although Black can avoid losing a full piece with 17...f6.

16 ♜xc7 ♜xc4 17 ♙xf6 gxf6 18 ♘xd5

It's obvious that White is better, but Black is successful in limiting the damage.

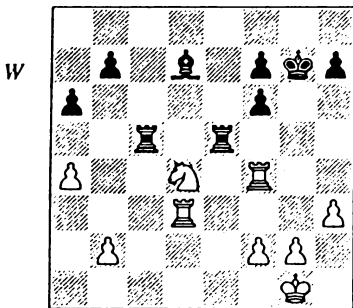
18...♖xd5 19 ♗xd8 ♠xd8 20 ♠xd5  
♜f8 21 h3 ♠cc8

This position is preferable for White, but it is not easy to use the advantage for anything. Over the following moves his superiority simply disappears.

22 ♠d6 ♠c6 23 ♠d4 ♠cc8 24 ♠f4  
♜g7 25 ♜d4 ♠e8 26 ♠d1 ♠e5!

A good move that defends a lot of important squares.

27 ♠d3 ♠cc5! (D)



Black's defence on his fourth rank is complete, as the bishop helps in the defence of the two sensitive squares b5 and f5.

28 ♠b3 b5 29 axb5 axb5 30 ♠a3  
♠cd5 31 ♜h2

Here Black is only minimally worse – in other words, he is defending but there is no reason why the defence should not be successful. With his next move he causes himself some unnecessary problems. The right move must be 31...♠d6 defending his third rank.

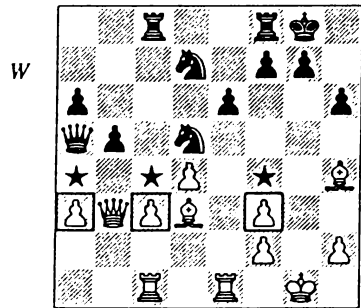
31...f5? 32 f3 ♠d6 33 ♠b3 ♠c5 34  
♠b4 ♠c4!

Black escapes into a drawn rook endgame. Still, it did not have to come to this.

35 ♜xf5+ ♜xf5 36 ♠bxc4 bxc4 37  
♠xf5 ♠b6 38 ♠f4 ♠xb2 39 ♠xc4 f6

This endgame is a theoretical draw, and although White tried for another 20 moves, our interest ends here.

In the following game Black has completely won the opening battle.



Acs – Atalik  
Budapest 1998

In this position Black is clearly superior due to his strong pressure on the white pawns and all the weaknesses in the white camp. Nevertheless, it is not so easy to win this kind of position, although Black made progress without problems:

19 c4 bxc4 20 ♜xc4 ♜7b6 21 ♜f1  
♗d2!

Winning the c-file.

22 ♠xc8 ♠xc8 23 ♠d1 ♗a5 24  
♗d3 ♗a4

Black is slowly winning squares, while White can do nothing but wait for his chance. One should never underestimate the power of the two bishops, and when his pawns fall, White will find useful diagonals for them.

25 ♠b1 a5 26 ♜g3 ♠c3

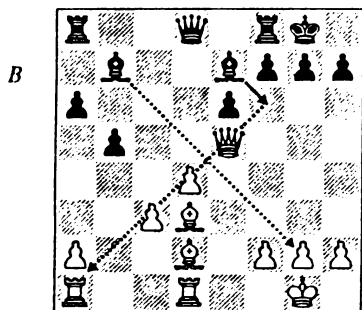
Black starts to cash in, but the rook ends up on a stupid square.

27 ♖a6 ♜xd4 28 ♜xa5 ♝xf3 29 ♜b5

Now Black should choose between 29...g5!, which keeps the bishops under control and gives air for the king, and the more solid option, 29...g6, which excludes the aggressive possibilities against the white king, which the pawn could support.

Instead Black blundered material with 29...h5? 30 ♙e2.

The ideal position for Black is one where only the pawn-structure is important, as in the following game.



Sigurjonsson – Larsen  
Geneva 1977

The black position is preferable, since the white pawn-centre is weak and troubled. Black can hope for a blockade on the light squares d5 and c4, while White has little to keep him warm. The course of the game makes the position look hopeless for White.

17...♙f6 18 ♜g3

18 ♜f4!? was an idea, to be able to transfer the rook quickly to the third

rank and simply because the queen is better here.

18...♙d5

Black's light-square strategy gets under way.

19 ♙e1 ♜d7 20 ♜g4?!

The attack White is trying to get started is too slow. While he is playing all these small moves Black is getting mobilized, and his advantage is increasing.

20...♝fc8 21 ♝e3 g6

Black's advantages are lasting, so he takes care to defend the king, since a bonus is awaiting him if nothing dramatic happens.

22 ♜f4 ♙g7 23 h4

Finally White adopts the set-up that he should have been aiming for some time ago.

23...♜c7

An exchange of queens would certainly favour Black, since all White has got is his attack. This is the fact that Black uses to take over the initiative.

24 ♜g5 h6 25 ♜g4 h5 26 ♜g5 ♜d8  
27 ♜f4 ♜f6 28 ♜g3 b4!

The white pawn-centre is undermined, and Black is on his way to victory.

## The Theory of 9...a6

This line differs from the others in this book, since there is no specific reply that suggests itself for White. Therefore I provide a range of ideas at move 10, from which I suggest you choose the line that fits your style and taste the best. This complete coverage will also be helpful to those playing this line as Black.

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♖f6  
5 ♘c3 e6 6 ♗f3 ♙b4 7 ♙d3 dxc4 8  
♙xc4 0-0 9 0-0 a6!

Now:

A: 10 ♖e5 111  
B: 10 a4 111  
C: 10 ♙b3 112  
D: 10 ♖e2 112  
E: 10 ♙d3 113  
F: 10 ♙g5 113

Instead 10 a3?! ♙xc3 11 bxc3 b5  
12 ♙d3 ♙b7 13 a4 ♖d5 gives Black  
no problems whatsoever, Goldin-Khari-  
tonov, Moscow 1989.

A)

10 ♖e5

This has a lot of logic behind it, but  
unfortunately is not a very good move.  
In the two games played at top level  
Black made draws, and even had some  
chances to gain an advantage in the  
Salov game.

10...b5 11 ♖f3

The idea behind the previous move.

11...♖xd4!

On other moves White benefits  
from the active position of the queen,  
so this exchange sacrifice is more or  
less forced. On the other hand it is  
very good, so there is no need to avoid  
it.

12 ♖xa8 ♖xe5 13 ♙e2 ♙xc3 14  
bxc3 ♖xe2 15 ♖xb8

Now:

a) 15...♖d5 16 ♖g3 ♖c4 17 ♙d2. It  
has been suggested that White should  
be a little better here, but I think this  
evaluation is mistaken. 17...f6 18 ♗fel  
e5 19 ♖f3 ♙g4 20 ♖c4 ♗c8 with no  
problems for Black, Hübner-Dreev,  
Wijk aan Zee 1996.

b) 15...♖c4! 16 ♙a3 ♗e8 17 ♙b4  
♖d5 18 a3 ♖c6 19 ♖e5 ♙b7 20 f3 f6  
21 ♖d4 e5 22 ♖f2 ♖c7 with a better  
game for Black, Lautier-Salov, Wijk  
aan Zee 1997.

B)

10 a4

This is suggested in several places  
with a claim that White's game should  
be preferred. The position is the same  
as a harmless line of the Queen's Gam-  
bit Accepted, but with the difference  
that the bishop is on b4.

10...♖c6 11 ♙g5 ♙e7

This position can be reached from a  
great variety of move-orders and open-  
ings, including the QGA.

12 ♖d2

Others:

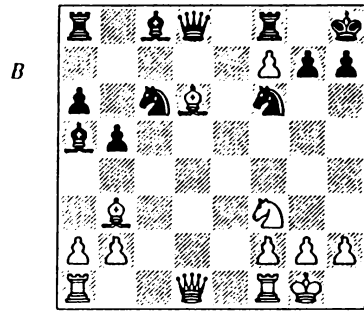
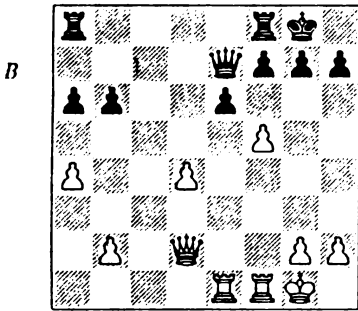
a) 12 ♗c1 (I dislike the way White  
deploys his rooks in this game; when  
he has played a4, there is no way to  
gain a queenside advantage, so the  
rooks should be on d1 and e1 or f1)  
12...♖a5 13 ♖d2 ♗d8 14 ♗fd1 ♙d7  
15 ♖e3 ♙e8 with a good solid posi-  
tion for Black, Conquest-Kharitonov,  
Moscow 1988.

b) 12 ♗e1 ♙d7 13 ♖e2 ♗e8 14 ♙f4  
♖a5 15 ♗ed1 (White does not seem to  
have any idea how to handle the posi-  
tion) 15...♖d5 16 ♙d2 ♙b4 (Black is  
completely level) 17 ♖d3 ♗ad8 18  
♙b3 ♗f6 19 ♙a2 ♖h5 1/2-1/2 Ehlvest-  
P.Schlosser, Calcutta 1998.

12...b6 13 ♗ad1 ♙b7 14 ♖e5 ♖b4  
15 f4 ♖e4!

This simplification turns out to  
solve Black's problems.

16 ♖xe4 ♙xe4 17 ♗de1 ♙d5 18  
♙xd5 ♖xd5 19 ♖c6 ♖d6 20 ♖xe7+  
♖xe7 21 ♙xe7 ♖xe7 22 f5 (D)



This perhaps looks dangerous, but too many pieces have been exchanged, so Black will not get crushed on the kingside.

After 22...♖d6 23 f6 ♜fd8 Black has sufficient counterplay. Zviagintsev-Benjamin, Groningen FIDE KO Wch 1997 ended shortly in a draw.

### C)

10 ♖b3 b5 11 d5!?

This entertaining sacrifice unfortunately cannot be totally correct. It should be borne in mind that our main line here is based on a blitz game, a form of chess in which the surprise value of a new move is more important than its objective strength, as the opponent lacks the time to adjust to the new situation.

11...♗xc3 12 dxe6

Otherwise White's play would not make sense.

12...♗a5 13 exf7+ ♖h8 14 ♖f4 ♗c6 15 ♖d6 (D)

15...♖g4?!

15...♗e7! is my suggestion for the logical approach. 16 ♖c5 ♗d7 does not seem to give White sufficient compensation for the piece.

16 ♜c1

16 ♖xf8 only gives some chances of equality.

16...♗e7 17 ♖c5 ♗e4

17...♗d7 18 ♖d6! would not give Black any chances to liberate himself from the pressure, and he has to repeat the position with 18...♗f6 19 ♖c5.

18 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 19 ♖xe7 ♖xe7 20 ♜fe1!

20 ♜c1 ♖xf3 21 gxf3 ♗d2 22 ♜xe7 ♗xf1 23 ♖xf1 gives compensation for the exchange, although Black has some possibilities to untangle himself and blockade the passed pawn with his king, and so liberate the rooks for aggressive purposes.

Now (after 20 ♜fe1):

a) 20...♖f5? 21 ♖c2 ♜ac8 22 ♗d4 ♖g6 23 ♗c6 ♜xf7 24 ♖xe4 ♜xc1 25 ♜xc1 ♖xe4 26 ♜c8+ with a winning endgame for White, which he managed to lose in Ivanchuk-Kramnik, New York blitz 1994.

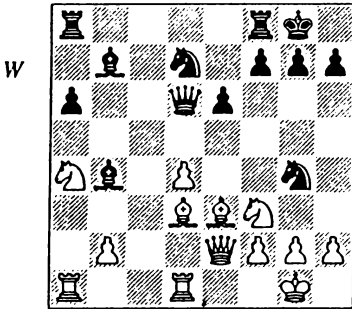
b) 20...♖g5! 21 ♗xg5 ♗xg5 22 ♜e7 h6 23 h4 ♗h7 24 ♜cc7 gives White a lot of compensation, but Black might actually have the better chances.

### D)

10 ♖e2 b5 11 ♖d3 ♖b7 12 a4 bxa4 13 ♗xa4?!

The knight has nothing to do on a4, as the b8-knight goes to d7 and covers the c5-square. Better is 13 ♖xa4 ♜c6 14 ♙g5 with normal play.

13... ♗d6 14 ♞d1 ♜bd7 15 ♙e3 ♜g4! (D)



Black is already better. White has no way to avoid his kingside being stripped bare. 16 ♙xh7+ ♜h8 17 ♙c2 ♙xf3 18 ♗xf3 ♗xh2+ 19 ♜f1 ♜xc3+ 20 ♜e3 g6 gave Black a better position in Liss-Kosashvili, Rishon le Zion 1994, although White went on to escape with a draw.

E)

10 ♙d3

This move might seem natural, but in this type of position the bishop often turns out to be better placed on b3.

10...b5 11 ♜e4?!

There is no good reason for this move. 11 ♙g5 would give a more or less normal position.

11... ♜bd7 12 ♙f4 ♙b7

Black has absolutely no problems at all.

13 ♜d6?

After this mistake White ends up in a nightmare of a position.

13... ♗b8! 14 ♜xb7 ♗xf4 15 a3 ♗b8!

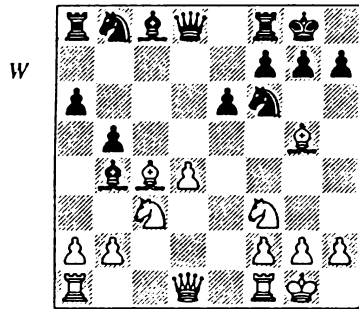
Stopping White playing b2-b4 and ♜c5.

16 axb4 ♗xb7 17 ♙e2 ♜d5

The white pawns are weak, and the knight on d5 is dominant, Knaak-Wirthensohn, Mitropa Cup (Bad Wörishofen) 1993.

F)

10 ♙g5 b5 (D)



11 ♙b3

11 ♙d3 is probably inferior. The light-squared bishop has more prospects on b3, where it exerts pressure on d5. 11... ♙b7 and now:

a) 12 ♗e2 looks right, but Black quickly equalized and was even a little better after 12... ♜bd7 13 ♞fd1 (13 ♞ad1 is a better try) 13... ♙e7 14 ♜e5 ♜d5 15 ♙d2 ♜xc3 16 bxc3 ♜xe5 17 ♗xe5 ♙f6 in Sigurjonsson-Larsen, Geneva 1977 – see p. 110.

b) 12 ♞e1 ♜bd7 13 ♞c1 (the rook is not effective on this square; White should play 13 ♗e2 and 14 ♞ad1, with a standard position) 13... ♞c8 14 a3 ♙xc3 15 bxc3 h6 16 ♙h4 ♗a5. Black has already more than equalized. I

believe only few people would find joy in the two bishops after 17 ♖b3 ♙xf3 18 gxf3 ♘d5, Acs-Atalik, Budapest 1998 – see p. 109.

11...♙b7 12 ♖e2!

This seems to be the only move that gives some play. Others:

a) 12 ♙c1 ♘bd7 13 ♙c2 ♙c8 14 ♖d3 ♙xc3 15 bxc3 ♖c7! 16 ♘e5 ♖xc3 17 ♘xd7 ♖xd3 18 ♙xd3 ♘xd7 with insufficient compensation for White, Lyrberg-Ornstein, Stockholm 1995.

b) 12 ♖d3 (the drawback of putting the queen on d3 instead of e2 will soon become clear) 12...♘bd7 13 ♙fd1 ♙xc3 14 bxc3 ♖c7 15 ♙ac1 ♙e4! (stopping all White's dreams) 16 ♖e2 ♙d5 (controlling the light squares and threatening ...♙fc8 with a strong blockade) 17 c4 (the only move) 17...bxc4 18 ♙xc4 ♖a5 19 ♙xf6 ♘xf6 20 ♙xd5 ♘xd5. Black is more comfortable and went on to win in Mancini-Marciano, Noyon 1998.

12...♙xc3 13 bxc3 ♘bd7 14 ♘e5

This is the critical move. After 14 a4 ♖c7 15 ♙fc1 ♘e4 16 ♖e3 (entertaining is 16 axb5 axb5 17 ♙xa8 ♙xa8 18 ♖xb5 ♙b8 19 ♖a6 ♘xg5 20 ♘xg5 ♖f4 0-1 Levitt-Emms, Cappelle la Grande 1994) 16...♘xg5 17 ♘xg5 ♘f6 18 f3 White's position is slightly weakened, and Black is a tiny bit better, Ibragimov-Dreev, Vienna 1996.

14...♖c7 15 ♘xd7 ♘xd7 16 ♙ac1

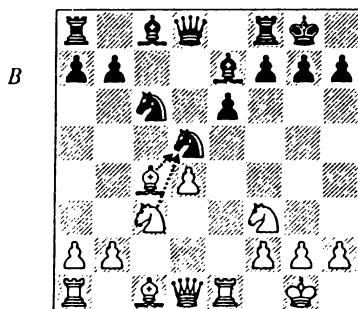
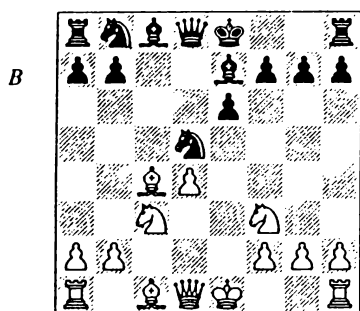
16 ♖g4 leads to equality after 16...♙h8 17 ♙ae1!? ♖xc3 18 d5 ♘f6 19 ♙xf6 ♖xf6 20 dxe6 ½-½ Balašov-Kharitonov, Pinsk 1993.

16...h6 17 ♙d2 ♘f6 18 ♙fe1 ♖c6 19 f3 ♙ad8 20 ♖f2 ♙fe8

This position might superficially be assessed as equal, as Black has good play on the light squares and no weaknesses. On the other hand, White has two bishops and nothing to fear. However, the position is in no way drawish. White went on to win in the game Sadler-Emms, British Ch (Hove) 1997, which is the first example in this chapter.

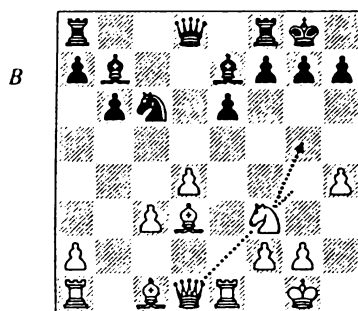
# 10 6...♙e7 7 cxd5 ♘xd5 8 ♙c4

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♘f6  
5 ♘c3 e6 6 ♘f3 ♙e7 7 cxd5 ♘xd5 8  
♙c4 (D)



9 ♙c4 bxc3 10 ♙c3 b6 11 ♙d3 ♙b7 12 ♙h4! (D).  
White tries to start an attack on the kingside with this sacrifice. In my opinion the chances already clearly favour White. Here are some examples showing why.

The difference from the 8 ♙d3 line (discussed in the next chapter) is that White is trying to exert pressure on d5, which causes Black problems in the smooth development of his position. On the other hand, the bishop might sometimes turn out to be on the wrong diagonal. The core of the idea is visible in the following position that arises after the further moves 8...0-0 9 0-0 ♘c6 10 ♙e1 (D).



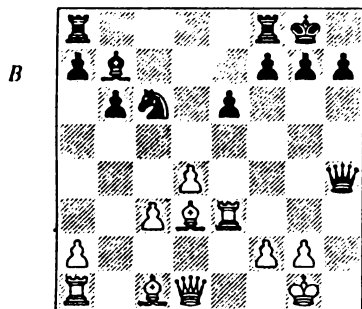
Black has some problems with his development. After 10...b6?! 11 ♘xd5 exd5 12 ♙b5 he is severely worse. Black has many ways to handle this problem. One way is 10...a6, another 10...♘f6 (for these moves, please see the theory section). The most dangerous idea is apparent after 10...♘xc3 11

Kasparov – Gonda  
Cannes simul 1988

13...♙xh4

The critical test. Other moves are considered in the theory section.

14  $\text{Qxh4}$   $\text{Wxh4}$  15  $\text{Ee3!}$  (D)



This is the idea behind the pawn sacrifice. The white rook wins another tempo on the black queen. But Black is not destroyed by a kingside attack, as one might believe, but by more positional means.

15...g6

The best move. Black has also tried 15...f5, but with no luck. After 15...h6 16  $\text{Eh3}$   $\text{Wf6}$  17  $\text{Wg4}$  White has a very strong attack, since after 17... $\text{Ch8}$  18  $\text{Qg5!}$  Black can only resign.

16  $\text{Eh3}$   $\text{Wf6}$  17  $\text{Qh6}$   $\text{Efe8}$  18  $\text{Wg4}$

Black is of course very vulnerable on the dark squares, but White has no direct way to the goal.

18... $\text{Eac8}$  19  $\text{Qg5}$   $\text{Wg7}$  20  $\text{Wh4}$  f5

Although this is forced, Black must have had a very sour feeling here. White's centre is very strong and he is not currently missing the h-pawn a lot. Kasparov shows with his superb understanding of dynamic positions that White has now achieved everything he wanted on the kingside, and now takes his pieces to the centre.

21  $\text{Ee1}$   $\text{Qa5}$  22  $\text{Ehe3}$   $\text{Wf7}$  23  $\text{Qb5!}$

Forcing the exchange of the bishop, after which Black is very weak on the light squares.

23... $\text{Qc6}$  24  $\text{Qxc6}$   $\text{Qxc6}$  25 c4

There seems to be nothing Black can do about the creation of a passed pawn in the centre. With the bishop controlling the promotion-square, it becomes a very strong candidate.

25... $\text{Wd7}$  26  $\text{Qf6}$   $\text{Wf7}$

Black has no plan, but must wait and see what White will do.

27 d5!?

If this is White's best, I am very disappointed. The heavy exchanges gives Black relief and possibilities of survival. Currently he can do nothing but wait. But on the other hand the white pieces do stand very well, and it could be difficult to improve the position further before breaking the centre.

27... $\text{exd5}$  28  $\text{Exe8+}$   $\text{Exe8}$  29  $\text{Exe8+}$   $\text{Wxe8}$  30  $\text{cxd5}$   $\text{We1+}$  31  $\text{Ch2}$   $\text{Qe5}$  32 d6  $\text{Qd7?}$

32... $\text{Qg4+}$  does not work because of 33  $\text{Wxg4!}$   $\text{fxg4}$  34 d7 winning.

Black could have put up a lot of resistance with 32... $\text{We2!}$  with the idea 33  $\text{Wd4}$   $\text{Qg4+}$  34  $\text{Qg3}$   $\text{Qxf6}$  35  $\text{Wxf6}$   $\text{Wg4+}$  with perpetual check.

33  $\text{Wc4+}$   $\text{Qf8}$  34  $\text{Wc8+}$   $\text{We8}$  35  $\text{Qe7+}$   $\text{Qf7}$  36  $\text{Wc4+}$   $\text{Qg7}$  37  $\text{We6}$

Black has no way to prevent the following little trick.

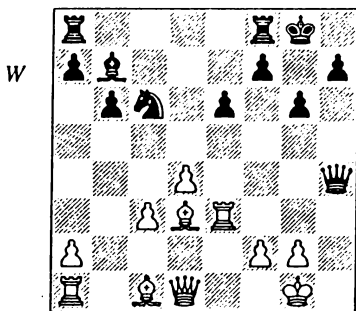
37...g5 38  $\text{Qf6+!}$  1-0

Here is another example, starting from the same line (D):

16  $\text{Eg3}$

Instead of Kasparov's 16  $\text{Eh3}$ . This does not make a big difference, as the queen still has to go back.

16... $\text{Wf6}$  17  $\text{Wg4}$   $\text{Wg7}$  18  $\text{Wh4}$  f5



Anand – G. Morrison  
British Ch (Blackpool) 1988

Black takes the consequences of accepting the pawn, and weakens his structure at once. White tries to get the same set-up as in the previous game, but Black actually has an idea.

19  $\text{♙h6}$   $\text{♜f6}$  20  $\text{♚g5}$   $\text{♜f7}$  21  $\text{♞e1}$   $\text{♜a5}$

21...  $\text{♞fe8}$  22 c4  $\text{♞ac8}$  was probably better, sitting tight and waiting, as in the previous game. Black's idea does not work out well.

22 c4  $\text{♚e4}!$

This was the trick. By exchanging the light-squared bishops, Black wants to put pressure on c4, and prevent the d4-d5 break-through. However, this does not entirely work as planned, and White gets a favourable endgame.

23  $\text{♚xe4}$   $\text{fxe4}$  24  $\text{♞c3}$   $\text{♞ac8}$  25  $\text{♞xe4}$   $\text{♞fe8}$

25...  $\text{♜xc4}$  26 d5! could be what Black overlooked. 25...  $\text{♞xc4}$  26  $\text{♞xc4}$   $\text{♜xc4}$  27 d5  $\text{♜d6}$  28  $\text{dxc6}$  is terrible as well.

26  $\text{♞f3}$   $\text{♜d7}$  27  $\text{♞ef4}$

White is winning. Black's position is full of weaknesses, the white bishop is far superior to the black knight, and

Black will never have time to win the pawn at c4.

27...  $\text{♜f8}$

27...  $\text{♜xc4}$ ? 28  $\text{♞f7}$   $\text{♜xf7}$  29  $\text{♞xf7}$   $\text{♜xf7}$  30  $\text{♜xh7+}$ .

28  $\text{♚h6}$   $\text{♞xf4}$  29  $\text{♜xf4}$

Threatening 30  $\text{♜f8+}$ .

29...  $\text{♜e7}$  30 c5!

The pawn is untouchable.

30...  $\text{♜c6}$  31  $\text{♚g5}$   $\text{♜d7}$  32  $\text{♜d6}!$

With total control over the promotion-square, it is hard for the rook and knight to defend against this passed pawn. Black's cause is hopeless, and he could have resigned here with a clear conscience.

Many of the other attacking themes in this line are covered in the Introduction, so now we move on to the theory.

## The Theory of 6... $\text{♚e7}$ 7 $\text{cxd5}$ $\text{♜xd5}$ 8 $\text{♚c4}$

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3  $\text{exd5}$   $\text{cxd5}$  4 c4  $\text{♜f6}$  5  $\text{♜c3}$  e6 6  $\text{♜f3}$   $\text{♚e7}$  7  $\text{cxd5}$   $\text{♜xd5}$  8  $\text{♚c4}$  0-0 9 0-0  $\text{♜c6}$

Or:

a) 9...  $\text{b6}!$ ? and now:

a1) 10  $\text{♞e1}!$ ? (White should take on d5, having created the threat) 10...  $\text{♚b7}$  11  $\text{♜e5}$   $\text{♜xc3}$  12  $\text{bxc3}$   $\text{♜d7}$  and Black is already on his way to being better. The position is comparable with Sigurjonsson-Larsen in Chapter 9. That is why in Aagaard-Danielsen, Copenhagen 1997 I decided to create complications with 13  $\text{♜xf7}!$ ?, but Black was still doing well.

a2) 10  $\text{♜xd5}$   $\text{exd5}$  11  $\text{♚b3}$  with the idea of 11...  $\text{♚g4}$  12  $\text{♜d3}$   $\text{♜c6}$  13  $\text{♜e5}$  with a preferable position.

a3) 10 ♖xd5!? cxd5 11 ♖f4 ♖g4 12 ♜d3 again with some advantage for White.

b) 9...♗xc3 10 bxc3 b6 (10...♜c7 gives White the chance of building up the traditional preferable positions from Chapter 8 with 11 ♜e2 ♘d7 12 ♖b2 b6 13 ♖d3 ♖b7 14 c4 Alterman-Khlian, Rostov 1993) and now:

b1) 11 ♘e5?! (I guess he wanted the draw badly, because look what happened) 11...♖b7 12 ♜h5 ♘c6 13 ♖d3 g6 14 ♘xg6 fxg6 15 ♖xg6 hxg6 16 ♜xg6+ ♘h8 1/2-1/2 A.Adamski-Cirić, Copenhagen 1995.

b2) White should continue 11 ♖d3 ♖b7 12 ♜e1 ♘d7!? (12...♘c6 13 h4! transposes to Line D) 13 c4 with a plus.

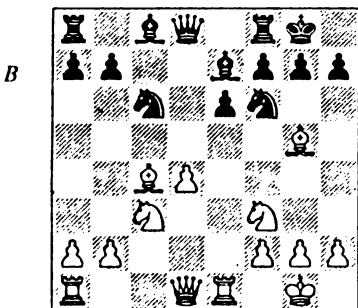
10 ♜e1

The options now are:

- A: 10...♘f6 118  
 B: 10...♖f6!? 119  
 C: 10...b6?! 119  
 D: 10...♘xc3 119  
 E: 10...♜e8!? 120  
 F: 10...♜d6?! 120  
 G: 10...a6 120

A)

10...♘f6 11 ♖g5 (D)



Now:

A1: 11...♘a5?! 118

A2: 11...b6 118

A1)

11...♘a5?!

It is never good to let the knight lose control over the e5-square, since the white knight will be very strong there.

12 ♖d3 b6 13 ♜e2 ♖b7 14 ♜ad1 ♘d5?

Allowing White to create threats.

15 ♜e4 g6 16 ♜h4 ♜e8 17 ♖b5! ♘xc3

17...♖c6 loses as well after 18 ♘d5 ♜xd5 19 ♖xe7 ♜xb5 20 ♘g5 h5 21 ♘xf7.

17...♘c6 18 ♘d5 ♜xd5 19 ♖xc6 is very simple.

18 ♖xe8 ♖xf3

18...♘d1 19 ♖xf7+ ♘f8 20 ♜h6+ ♘xf7 21 ♜xh7+ ♘c8 22 ♘e5 mates.

19 ♖xf7+! ♘xf7 20 ♜xh7+ ♘f8 21 ♖h6+ ♘e8 22 ♜xg6+ ♘d7 23 ♜xe6+ ♘e8

23...♘c7 24 ♜xe7+ ♜xe7 25 ♜xe7+ ♘d6 26 ♜d1 wins as well.

24 gxf3

1-0 Harman-Wright, England 1967.

The reason for resigning is the attack starting with 24...♘d1 25 ♖g5!.

A2)

11...b6 12 a3 ♖b7 13 ♜d3 ♜c8 14 ♜ad1 ♜e8 15 h4

Ribli has of course studied these kind of positions, while Wells does not find a way to stop the white attack. After the next move it is over.

15...g6? 16 d5 ♘xd5 17 ♖xd5 exd5 18 ♘d5 ♖xg5 19 hxg5 ♜e1+ 20 ♜e1 ♜f8 21 ♘f6+ ♘h8 22 ♜d7 ♖a8 23 ♜h3 h5 24 g4

1-0 Ribli-Wells, Szeged 1997. Very impressive.

B)

10...♙f6!? 11 ♘e4

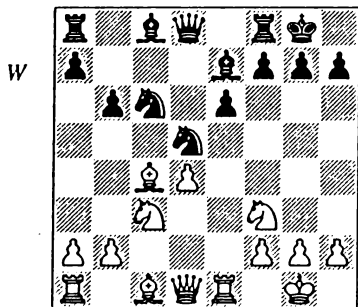
11 ♙b3!? is an interesting possibility. The main idea is 11...b6 12 ♘xd5 exd5 13 ♘e5 with a white plus.

11...h6 12 ♗d3 ♘a5 13 ♙b5 ♙d7 14 ♙xd7 ♗xd7 15 ♘e5 ♗d8 16 ♘xf6+ ♘xf6 17 ♛e3

White's attack does not lack potential, but still there is nothing but perpetual after the continuation 17...♗d5 18 ♛g3 ♘h8 19 ♛h3 ♘c6 20 ♙xh6 gxh6 21 ♗e3 ♘g8 22 ♙xh6+ ♘xh6 23 ♗xh6+, Wirthensohn-Giertz, Swiech 1993.

C)

10...b6?! (D)



This is a well-known mistake.

11 ♘xd5! exd5 12 ♙b5 ♙d7

12...♙b7 is no better. 13 ♙f4 ♙d6 14 ♙xd6 ♗xd6 15 ♛c1 a6 16 ♙xc6 ♙xc6 17 ♘e5 ♙b7 18 ♗g4 ♛ad8 19 a3 a5 20 ♛c3 f6 21 ♛g3 ♗e7 22 ♘d3 ♗c7 23 ♛ge3 ♙c8 24 ♗f4 ♗xf4 25 ♘xf4 gave White a big plus in Comas Fabrego-Pomes, Barcino 1994.

13 ♗a4 ♘b8 14 ♙f4 ♙xb5 15 ♗xb5 a6 16 ♗a4 ♙d6 17 ♙xd6 ♗xd6 18 ♛ac1 ♛a7 19 ♗c2 ♛e7 20 ♛xe7 ♗xe7 21 ♗c7! ♗xc7 22 ♛xc7 f6 23 ♘f1 ♛f7 24 ♛c8+ ♛f8 25 ♛c3

With a more or less winning endgame for White, Botvinnik-Alekhine, Amsterdam AVRO 1938.

D)

10...♘xc3 11 bxc3 b6 12 ♙d3 ♙b7 13 h4! ♘a5!

This seems to be the only possibility that has proved to be any good, though still White has many promising ideas. Instead:

a) 13...♙xh4 14 ♘xh4 ♗xh4 15 ♛e3 is dealt with above in the introduction to this chapter.

b) 13...♗d5?! only gives White a route for the queenside rook, which normally is totally out of play in these lines. 14 ♛b1! ♛ac8 15 ♙b5 ♗d6 16 ♛h5 g6 17 ♛h6 ♙f6 18 ♘g5 ♙xg5 19 ♙xg5 e5 20 h5 gave White a decisive attack in the game Bricard-Rausis, Paris 1995.

c) 13...♙f6 14 ♘g5 g6 15 ♗g4 h5 16 ♗g3 ♘e7 17 ♙a3 ♛c8 (17...♛e8 18 ♘xe6 ♗d7 19 ♘c7 led to a win for White in the game Mikhalchishin-Luczak, Cappelle la Grande 1989) 18 ♘xe6! fxe6 19 ♛xe6 (White's attack is irresistible) 19...♛c7 20 ♛ae1 ♛f7 21 ♙xg6 ♛d7 22 ♙xf7+ (now White has a rook and three pawns against two pieces, but he decides to return some of the material for a winning attack) 22...♘xf7 23 ♛xf6+! ♘xf6 24 ♗e5+ ♘f7 25 ♗e6+ ♘f8 26 ♗f6+ 1-0 Cu.Hansen-Ki.Georgiev, Kiljava jr Wch 1984.

14 ♘g5

Both 14 h5!? and 14 ♖c2 planning ♜d1-d3 are good alternatives.

14...♗g5 15 ♗xg5 ♜d5 16 ♜g4 f5 17 ♜g3 ♠ac8 18 ♗f1 ♜d7 19 h5

The game is unclear, Hernandez-Minguell, Vulca 1984.

E)

10...♞e8!?

This is a very solid possibility, but still White has a little something after 11 ♖b3 b6 12 ♝xd5 exd5 13 ♗f4 ♗g4 14 ♗a4 ♠c8 15 ♠c1 ♗d7 16 h3, Danielsen-Berend, Erevan OL 1996.

F)

10...♜d6?!

This is inventive but not so good. White's lead in development, though modest, soon makes itself felt.

11 ♝e4 ♜d7 12 ♗g5! ♠d8 13 ♠c1 h6 14 ♗xd5 ♜xd5 15 ♗xe7 ♝xe7 16 ♝e5 f6

Black is close to having solved all his problems, but White continues to play very aggressively.

17 ♠c7! ♗d7

17...fxe5? 18 ♠xe7 exd4 19 ♜g4 ♜e5 20 f4 wins the house.

18 ♜g4 ♝h7 19 ♝c3 ♜d6 20 ♠xd7 ♠xd7 21 ♝xd7 ♜xd7

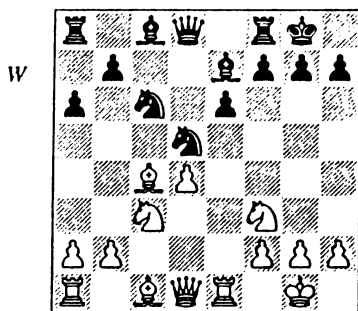
Now 22 ♠xe6 led, in Stein-Tal, Pärnu 1971, to an endgame that Black should never have survived, but 22 ♜xe6! is even stronger.

G)

10...a6 (D)

11 ♗b3!?

11 ♜e2!? is an interesting possibility. Black cannot win a pawn with 11...♝b6 12 ♗b3 ♝xd4 13 ♝xd4 ♜xd4 14 ♗e3 ♜d8 (14...♜b4!? 15



♠ad1 ♗f6 16 ♜h5 gives Black a lot of problems, as he cannot play 16...g6? (17 ♜c5 losing the exchange) 15 ♠ed1 ♜c7 16 ♠ac1 and White has more than enough compensation. Instead, Black should play 11...b5 and what will happen is not easy to say. 11 a4 was played in Stein-Krogius, Tbilisi 1967, and definitely has potential. Still, 11 ♗b3 is my recommendation.

11...♝xc3

11...♞e8 is not as good as it was on move ten, but still it is playable. 12 ♜d3 ♝xc3?! (this does not seem to have any coherence with 11...♞e8) 13 bxc3 ♗f6 14 ♜c4 (White decides not to sacrifice the pawn in the standard way, when he has this perfect square for his queen) 14...♗d7 15 h4 ♝e7 16 ♝g5 ♗xg5 17 ♗xg5 ♜c7 18 ♗xe7! (exchanging the only piece that could defend the king) 18...♠xe7 19 ♠e3 ♠ae8 20 h5 ♗c6 21 ♜h4 (the white attack is very strong, and he is currently threatening 22 h6 smashing the black king's position) 21...h6 22 ♠ae1 ♝f8 23 ♠g3 (g7 is hard to defend without further weakening) 23...♗d5 24 ♜g4 f5 25 ♜g6 ♗xb3 26 axb3 ♜b6 27 ♜h7 ♠f7 28 d5! 1-0 A.Sokolov-Burger, Reykjavik 1990.

11...b5 is maybe the best move. White played the inefficient 12 ♘e4 in L.Å.Schneider-Wessman, Swedish Ch 1992, but I think there is some advantage for White after 12 ♘d5 exd5 13 ♘e5 ♘xe5 14 dxe5, when one possible continuation is 14...♙e6 15 ♙e3 ♙b4 16 ♖f1 ♜c8 17 f4 ♗d7 18 ♗d3 with good prospects for White.

11...♘f6 12 a3 ♘a5 13 ♙c2 b5 14 ♗d3 ♙b7 15 ♙g5 g6 16 ♘e5 ♜c8 17 ♗h3 gave White good chances for a successful attack in Bruno-Devčić, Buenos Aires 1994.

12 bxc3 b5 13 ♙c2 ♙b7 14 h4!

This is similar to the line after 10...♘xc3.

14...♙f6

14...♙xh4 15 ♘xh4 ♗xh4 16 ♖e3 gives White a strong attack, but probably is better in this version than with the pawns on b6 and a7, since White now does not have plans including c3-c4 and d4-d5.

14...♘a5!? is another possibility, but White has an attack after 15 ♗d3 g6 16 h5 with the obvious threat 17 hxg6 hxg6 18 ♖xe6!.

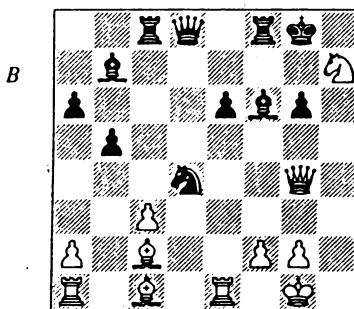
15 ♘g5 g6 16 ♗g4 ♜c8

16...h5 17 ♗g3 ♘e7 18 ♙a3 ♖e8 19 ♘xe6 wins as in Line D.

17 h5 ♘xd4 18 hxg6 fxg6

18...♘xc2 19 ♗h5 and 18...hxg6 19 ♗h4 leave Black defenceless.

19 ♘xh7! (D)



19...♘xc2

19...♔xh7 20 ♗xg6+ ♔h8

20 ♗xg6+ ♔h8

20...♙g7 21 ♙h6 ♜c7 22 ♘g5 wins.

21 ♙g5 ♙xg5 22 ♘xg5 ♗d7 23 ♖xe6!

White's attack is irresistible.

23...♜c6 24 ♗h5+ ♔g8 25 ♖d1 ♗g7 26 ♖dd6!

Keeping the control of the sixth rank.

26...♖xd6 27 ♖xd6 ♖f6 28 ♖d8+!

1-0 A.Sokolov-Kharitonov, Moscow ECC 1990. A model game.



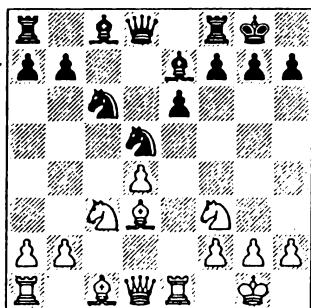
d) 9...♘xc3 10 bxc3 ♘d7 11 ♙e1 ♗c7 12 c4 b6 13 ♙b2, Sher-Ferguson, Hastings 1995/6, gives White a very pleasant position, comparable to Chapter 8.

e) 9...♘f6 10 ♗e2 b6 11 ♙d1!? (placing the rooks on c1 and d1 does not harmonize with a kingside attack; 11 ♙g5 ♙b7 12 ♙ad1 ♘c6 13 ♙fe1 is the treatment I suggest) 11...♘c6 12 ♙g5 ♙b7 13 a3 ♙c8 14 ♙ac1 ♙e8 15 ♙b1 g6 16 ♙a2 ♘d5 17 h4 ♙xg5 18 ♘xg5 ♘ce7 19 g3 is slightly preferable for White, Øgaard-Fossan, Namsøs 1995.

### 9 0-0 0-0

9...♘cb4? is bad. First of all White gets control over e5, but secondly Black does not complete his development in time. 10 ♙b1 ♘f6?! (10...0-0 11 a3 ♘xc3 12 bxc3 ♘d5 13 c4 ♘f6 14 ♙b2 gives White the better game; Black's pieces are misplaced and undeveloped) 11 ♘e5 ♙d7 12 a3 ♘bd5 13 ♘xd5 ♘xd5 14 ♗h5 (preventing castling leaves Black in great difficulties) 14...g6 15 ♗f3 ♙f6 16 ♙h6 and Black is not having any fun with his new idea, Karaklajić-Ellebracht, Dortmund 1988.

### 10 ♙e1 (D)



B

Now Black has the following options:

A: 10...♘f6 123

B: 10...♙f6 125

Others are less satisfactory:

a) 10...b6? 11 ♘xd5 ♗xd5 (after 11...exd5! 12 ♙xh7+ ♘xh7 13 ♗c2+ Black has only slight compensation for the pawn, Krutti-Collas, Budapest 1993) 12 ♙e4 ♗d6 13 ♘e5 (White is winning) 13...♙b7 (13...♘xe5 14 ♙xa8 ♘c6 15 ♙xc6 ♗xc6 16 d5, etc., Gaponenko-Tsiganova, Kishinev 1995) 14 ♙f4 ♙fe8 (14...♙f6 15 ♘g6 ♗xd4 16 ♘xf8 ♘xf8 17 ♗xd4 ♙xd4 18 ♙ad1 ♙d8 19 ♙xc6 1-0 Brodsky-Kobelev, Russia 1997) 15 ♙xh7+! ♘xh7 16 ♗h5+ ♘g8 17 ♗xf7+ ♘h7 18 ♗h5+ ♘g8 19 ♗f7+ ♘h7 20 ♙e3! with a winning attack, Osieka-Stenzel, Rheinland-Pfalz Ch (Heimbach) 1987.

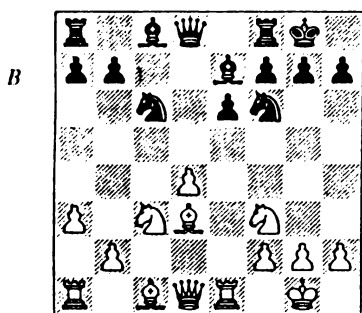
b) 10...♘d7 (this is passive, and in no way prevents White from generating an attack) 11 ♙c2 ♙f6 12 ♗d3 g6 13 ♙b3 ♙c8 14 ♙h6 ♙g7 15 ♙xg7 ♘xg7 16 h4 and White is better, Larsen-Pomar, Costa Brava 1976.

c) 10...♘xc3 11 bxc3 b6 and now 12 ♗e2 gives White a little solid plus, e.g. 12...♙b7 13 ♗e4 g6 14 ♗g4 ♙f6 15 h4 ♙e8 16 h5 ♙g7 17 ♘g5 with a strong attack in Thorhallsson-Lyberg, Gausdal 1994, but 12 h4!? is also possible. Black can use the fact that he has not yet played ...♙b7 by 12...♙xh4 13 ♘xh4 ♗xh4 14 ♙e3 f5, although White has splendid compensation for the pawn after 15 ♗e2.

A)

10...♘f6 11 a3 (D)

Now:



A1: 11...Wd6 124

A2: 11...b6 124

A1)

11...Wd6

This attempt to disturb White's development by attacking d4 disturbs Black more than White.

12 ♖c2 ♗d8 13 ♙e3 b6 14 ♖d3 g6  
15 ♗ad1 ♙b7 16 ♙g5 ♗c7

Both players have wasted a tempo, but Black also put his rook on d8, where it is not at all certain it should be.

17 ♙b3 ♖xd4!?

This interesting attempt to take over the initiative is not completely correct.

18 ♖xd4 ♖g4 19 ♖h3 ♖xf2

Now:

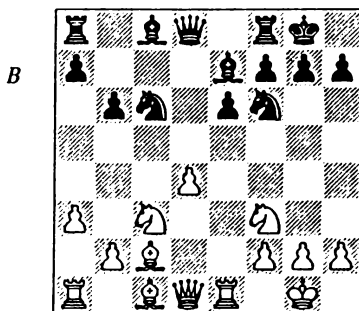
a) 20 ♖h4? ♖xd1 21 ♙xe7 ♗xd4  
22 ♖xd4 ♖xc3 23 ♗xc6 ♖d5!! (a strong novelty; previously known was 23...♗e8?? 24 ♗xg6+! hxg6 25 ♙xf7+ 1-0 Chekhov-Veselovsky, USSR 1980)  
24 ♙xd5 ♙xd5 25 ♖xd5?! (25 ♗e2 to try to draw was the only real chance)  
25...♗e8! 26 ♖e5 ♖d7 27 ♗d6 ♖xc7 and Black went on to win in Kurajica-Kutirov, Strumica 1995.

b) 20 ♖xf2 ♙xg5 21 ♖g1 ♙f6 22 ♖de2 gives White a clear edge, but

still Black has a lot of play due to his two bishops.

A2)

11...b6 12 ♙c2 (D)



With another branching-out:

A21: 12...♙b7 124

A22: 12...♙a6! 125

A21)

12...♙b7

This is passive, and White soon has dangerous threats.

13 ♖d3 g6

13...♗c8 14 d5! exd5 (14...♖a5 15 ♙g5 g6 16 d6 and White won in the game Coleman-Gilbert, British League (4NCL) 1996) 15 ♙g5 ♖e4 16 ♖xe4 dxe4 17 ♖xe4 g6 18 ♙h6 ♗e8 19 ♗ad1 ♖c7 20 ♙b3 ♖d8 21 ♖d4 1-0 W.Schmidt-Imanaliev, Moscow OL 1994.

13...♗e8? 14 d5! exd5 15 ♙g5 ♖e4 16 ♖xe4 dxe4 17 ♖xe4 g6 18 ♖h4 ♖c7 19 ♙b3 ♙d6 20 ♙f6 h5 21 ♖g5 ♖h7 22 ♙c2 1-0 Dizdar-Dizdarević, Sarajevo 1988 – see p. 8.

14 ♙h6 ♗e8 15 ♗ad1 ♖d6!

15...♗c8 16 ♙b3 ♖a5 17 ♙a2 ♖d5 18 ♖e4 ♖f6 (Bezemer-Moonen,

Holland 1995) 19 ♘xf6+ ♙xf6 20 b4 ♘c6 21 d5 gives White a little edge.

15...♙f8 16 ♙g5 ♙e7 17 ♙b3 ensures White the better position, Velimirović-Böhm, Amsterdam 1976.

16 ♗d2

16 ♘b5!? might give White a better position after 16...♗d7 17 ♘e5 ♘xe5 18 dxe5 ♗xd3 19 ♙xd3 ♘g4 20 ♙f4 ♙c5 21 ♙g3, when both b2-b4 and invasions with the knight are threatened.

16...♞ed8 17 ♙f4 ♗d7 18 ♙g5 ♞ac8 19 ♗f4

With an interesting position, in which I believe White has the better prospects, Brodsky-Labutin, Kstovo 1994.

## A22)

12...♙a6!

This is more active and prevents White from attacking directly.

13 ♙g5 ♞c8 14 ♞c1

14 ♗d2 ♘a5! 15 ♞ad1 ♘c4 16 ♗c1 ♗c7 17 d5 ♘xb2 gives Black the better chances, Novik-Vasiukov, Leningrad 1991. If Black did not have this knight manoeuvre, White would gain a strong attack with ♗d2-f4-h4 with threats.

14...♘d5 15 h4!

Black has some problems, Borge-Danielsen, Danish League 1997/8. See the Introduction for the rest of the game.

## B)

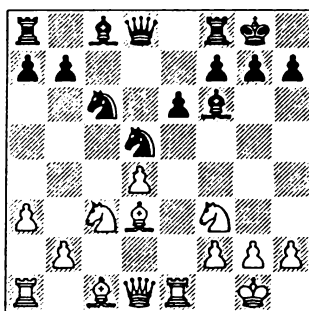
10...♙f6 11 a3 (D)

11...♙d7

Other options:

a) 11...♘xc3 12 bxc3 b6 13 h4. Compared with Chapter 10, this is an inferior sacrifice. The pawn should not be at a3, where the bishop belongs, and the black bishop is probably better

B



placed on c8 than on b7, since Black has ...f5 instead of ...g6 after accepting the sacrifice. Nevertheless, it is so strong, that it should be played. Now:

a1) 13...♙b7?! 14 ♘g5 g6 15 ♗g4 h5 16 ♗g3, Shabtai-Kataev, Tel-Aviv 1995. White has his compensation, but has not needed to sacrifice anything. Still, he would rather have his pawn on a2.

a2) 13...♙xh4 14 ♘h4 ♗xh4 15 ♞e3 f5 16 ♗e2 with compensation, Vaiser-Meduna, Sochi 1983.

b) 11...♘ce7 12 ♙c2 b6 13 ♗d3 g6 14 ♙h6 (14 h4!? is an option – less forcing, but still dangerous) 14...♙g7 15 ♗d2 ♙b7 16 ♘e5?! (16 h4!) 16...♘f5 17 ♙xf5 exf5 18 ♙xg7 ♘xg7 19 ♞ac1 with equal play, Yagupov-Asrian, St Petersburg Petrov mem 1996.

c) 11...g6 (it is difficult to say anything about this move, because the only practical example is kind of ridiculous) 12 ♙h6 ♙g7 13 ♙xg7 (perhaps 13 ♗d2 is stronger, preparing h2-h4-h5, etc.) 13...♘xg7 14 ♘e5 (White has a slight advantage, but nothing special) 14...♗b6 15 ♘a4 ♗xd4 16 ♞e4 and, in Löffler-Malachowski, Eppingen 1988, White went on to win.

d) 11...♖xd4?! 12 ♖xd4 ♘xd4 13 ♘xh7+ ♔xh7 14 ♗xd4 (White is better developed and thereby has an advantage; Black can also quickly get problems with his king, as we are about to see) 14...♗f6 15 ♚e5 ♖xc3 16 ♗xc3 ♔g8 17 ♘g5 ♗g6 18 ♘e7! gives White a clear advantage due to his attack on the dark squares, Zinn-Marović, Zinnowitz 1966.

12 ♘c2 ♚c8 13 ♖e4 ♘e7

13...♗b6 14 ♗d3 is very dangerous for Black.

14 ♗d3 g6 15 ♘d2

15 ♘h6!? ♚e8 16 ♘b3 must be a little better for White. One example is 16...♖a5 17 ♘a2 a6 18 ♖c5 when the white queen will join the attack if Black is not extremely careful.

15...♗b6

15...a5! is an improvement, suggested by Gulko, though White should be a little better after 16 ♘b3.

16 b4! ♚fd8

16...a5 17 ♖c5! would lead to a white advantage.

17 ♘b3 ♘e8 18 ♚ac1 a6?

18...a5 19 b5 ♖a7 20 a4 was better, but White possesses an advantage beyond doubt.

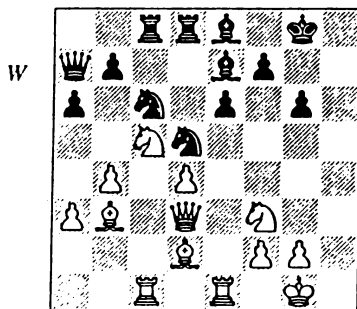
19 h4 ♖a7?

Still 19...a5 was required.

20 ♖c5 ♖c6 21 h5 ♗a7?

21...♔g7 to protect g6 was mentioned by Gulko as the best move. Now Black is lost.

22 hxg6 hxg6 (D)



23 ♖xe6! fxe6 24 ♚xe6 ♘f7

24...♔g7 25 ♘xd5! ♚xd5 26 ♗e4 ♚d7 27 d5 opens up for the bishop and decides the game.

25 ♚xg6+ ♔f8

On 25...♘xg6, 26 ♗xg6+ ♔h8 27 ♗h6+ ♔g8 28 ♘xd5+ ♚xd5 29 ♗e6+ wins easily.

26 ♚h6 ♔e8 27 ♚e1

1-0 Gulko-Kaidanov, USA Ch 1994.

# Index of Variations

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3  
5...♘c6 6 ♘f3 ♗g4 7 cxd5 ♘xd5 8 ♖b3 ♗xf3 9 gxf3 e6: Chapter 1  
5...♘c6 6 ♘f3 others: Chapter 2  
5...♘c6 6 ♗g5 without 6...♗e6: Chapter 3  
5...♘c6 6 ♗g5 ♗e6: Chapter 4  
5...g6: Chapter 5  
5...e6 6 ♘f3 ♗b4 7 cxd5: Chapter 6  
5...e6 6 ♘f3 ♗b4 7 ♗d3 miscellaneous: Chapter 7  
5...e6 6 ♘f3 ♗b4 7 ♗d3 dxc4 8 ♗xc4 0-0 9 0-0 b6: Chapter 8  
5...e6 6 ♘f3 ♗b4 7 ♗d3 dxc4 8 ♗xc4 0-0 9 0-0 a6: Chapter 9  
5...e6 6 ♘f3 ♗c7 7 cxd5 ♘xd5 8 ♗c4: Chapter 10  
5...e6 6 ♘f3 ♗c7 7 cxd5 ♘xd5 8 ♗d3: Chapter 11

## 1: The Classical Endgame

5...♘c6 6 ♘f3 ♗g4 7 cxd5 ♘xd5 8  
♖b3 ♗xf3 9 gxf3 e6 33 10 ♖xb7  
♘xd4 11 ♗b5+ ♘xb5 12 ♖c6+! ♗e7  
13 ♖xb5 ♖d7 14 ♘xd5+ ♖xd5  
A: 15 ♖xd5 exd5 16 0-0 34  
B: 15 ♖xd5 exd5 without 16 0-0 35  
C: 15 ♗g5+! 36

## 2: Avoiding the Endgame

5...♘c6 6 ♘f3 43 6...♗g4 7 cxd5  
♘xd5 8 ♖h3 ♗xf3 9 gxf3 ♘b6!?  
A: 10 d5 44 10...♘d4 11 ♖d1 e5 12  
dxe6  
A1: 12...fxc6 44  
A2: 12...♗c5!? 47  
B: 10 ♗c3 47 10...e6  
B1: 11 ♗g1 47  
B2: 11 0-0-0 48

## 3: 6 ♗g5

5...♘c6 6 ♗g5 55  
A: 6...dxc4 56

B: 6...♖a5?! 57 7 a3

B1: 7...dxc4 57

B2: 7...♘e4 57

C: 6...♖b6?! 57 7 cxd5 ♘xd4! 8  
♗e3 e5 9 dxe6 ♗c5 10 exf7+ ♗e7

C1: 11 ♗c4!? 58

C2: 11 ♗d3! 58

D: 6...♗g4?! 58

E: 6...♘e4?! 59

F: 6...e6 59

4: 6...♗e6

5...♘c6 6 ♗g5 ♗e6 66

A: 7 c5 66

B: 7 ♗e2 66

C: 7 ♖d2 67

D: 7 ♗xf6 67 7...gxf6!

D1: 8 ♘f3 67

D2: 8 ♖h5 67

D3: 8 ♖d2 68

D4: 8 c5 68

E: 7 g3 69

F: 7 ♘f3 69

G: 7 ♖ge2 70

H: 7 ♜c1 70,

I: 7 a3 70

5: 5...g6

5...g6 78 6 ♖b3 ♗g7 7 cxd5 0-0 8

♗e2 ♖bd7 9 ♗f3 ♖b6 10 ♖ge2

A: 10...♗g4 80

B: 10...♗f5 81

6: 5...e6 6 ♖f3 ♗b4 7 cxd5

5...e6 6 ♖f3 ♗b4 7 cxd5 84 7...♖xd5

A: 8 ♖c2 84

A1: 8...♖d7 84

A2: 8...♖c6 85

A21: 9 ♗e2 85

A22: 9 ♗d3 85

B: 8 ♗d2 86

7: 7 ♗d3: Introduction and

Unusual 9th Moves

5...e6 6 ♖f3 ♗b4 7 ♗d3 91 7...dxc4 8

♗xc4 0-0 9 0-0

A: 9...♗d7!? 91

B: 9...♖bd7 92

8: 9...b6

5...e6 6 ♖f3 ♗b4 7 ♗d3 dxc4 8 ♗xc4

0-0 9 0-0 b6 101

9: 9...a6!

5...e6 6 ♖f3 ♗b4 7 ♗d3 dxc4 8 ♗xc4

0-0 9 0-0 a6! 111

A: 10 ♖e5 111

B: 10 a4 111

C: 10 ♗b3 112

D: 10 ♖e2 112

E: 10 ♗d3 113

F: 10 ♗g5 113

10: 6...♗e7 7 cxd5 ♖xd5 8 ♗c4

5...e6 6 ♖f3 ♗e7 7 cxd5 ♖xd5 8 ♗c4

117 8...0-0 9 0-0 ♖c6 10 ♜e1

A: 10...♖f6 118 11 ♗g5

A1: 11...♖a5?! 118

A2: 11...b6 118

B: 10...♗f6!? 119

C: 10...b6?! 119

D: 10...♖xc3 119

E: 10...♜e8!? 120

F: 10...♖d6?! 120

G: 10...a6 120

11: 6...♗e7 7 cxd5 ♖xd5 8 ♗d3

5...e6 6 ♖f3 ♗e7 7 cxd5 ♖xd5 8 ♗d3

122 8...♖c6 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♜e1

A: 10...♖f6 123 11 a3

A1: 11...♖d6 124

A2: 11...b6 124 12 ♗c2

A21: 12...♗b7 124

A22: 12...♗a6! 125

B: 10...♗f6 125